

# Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 820N/821N.

- For proper handset use, read this guide.
- Keep this guide in a convenient place for reference.
- Accessible SoftBank services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

**SoftBank 820N/821N is compatible with 3G network technology.**










## Notes

- Copying this guide in whole or part without authorization is prohibited.
- Content of this guide is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this guide. Please contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-46) about unclear or missing information.



# Before Using This Guide

- SoftBank 820N and 821N are referred to as “handset” in this guide.
  - Most operation descriptions are based on default settings and begin in Standby.
  - Sample screenshots\* are provided for reference only. Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.
  - Key illustrations are simplified and differ in appearance from actual handset keys.
  - Handset illustrations are based on 820N.
  - “(Japanese)” appears next to functions or services which require Japanese ability to use.
- \* Standby Display used in this guide is based on SoftBank 820N Red model. Design theme of Main Menu and windows is based on default setting *Basic*.

	<b>Getting Started</b>	<b>1</b>
	<b>Basic Operations</b>	<b>2</b>
	<b>Calling</b>	<b>3</b>
	<b>Security</b>	<b>4</b>
	<b>Mail</b>	<b>5</b>
	<b>Internet</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>Camera</b>	<b>7</b>
	<b>TV</b>	<b>8</b>
	<b>Music Player &amp; S! Appli</b>	<b>9</b>
	<b>Tools</b>	<b>10</b>
	<b>Data Management</b>	<b>11</b>
	<b>Connectivity</b>	<b>12</b>
	<b>Customization</b>	<b>13</b>
	<b>Appendix</b>	<b>14</b>

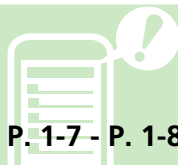


# Search Guide

## ●Function/Service Name Search

Table of Contents .....	<b>P. viii</b>
Menu List .....	<b>P. 14-18</b>
Index .....	<b>P. 14-34</b>

## ●Display Indicators



## ●Learning Basics

**P. 2-2 - P. 2-7**

## ●Solving Problems

Troubleshooting .....	<b>P. 14-5</b>
Warranty & After Sales Service .....	<b>P. 14-45</b>

## ●Objective Search



My Number &  
E-mail Address

Customizing  
Handset

Mastering  
Basics

820N/821N  
Features

SoftBank Mobile  
Features



<b>My Phone Number</b> Check your phone number on handset. <b>P. 1-20</b>	<b>My Account Details</b> Save your contact information to Account Details to send it to your friends. <b>P. 1-20</b>	<b>Customize E-mail Address</b> Change the account name (part before @) of your e-mail address. <b>P. 13-22</b>	<b>Exchange Information Wirelessly</b> Send your e-mail address to compatible devices via infrared. <b>P. 12-2</b>
<b>Download Music</b> Download songs from Chaku-Uta® sites and set as ringtones or play back on Music Player. <b>P. 9-3</b>	<b>Set Ringtones</b> Set your favorite songs as ringtones. <b>P. 13-11</b>	<b>Wallpaper</b> Set your favorite image to appear in Standby with clock or calendar. <b>P. 13-4</b>	<b>Add Shortcuts</b> Add frequently used functions to desktop shortcut icons. <b>P. 2-4</b>
<b>Basic Operations</b> Learn basic menu navigation and key operations. <b>P. 2-2</b>	<b>Text Entry</b> Enter text for composing messages, creating Phone Book entries, etc. <b>P. 2-10</b>	<b>Messaging Services</b> Use S! Mail or SMS to send text messages. Attach and send files via S! Mail. <b>P. 5-2</b>	<b>Mobile Internet</b> Use Yahoo! Keitai to access Mobile Internet sites tailored for SoftBank customers. <b>P. 6-2</b>
<b>Music Player</b> Download songs and play them on handset. <b>P. 9-2</b>	<b>Camera &amp; Video Camera</b> Shoot still images and videos. <b>P. 7-2</b>	<b>TV</b> Handset supports One Seg Digital TV. <b>P. 8-2</b>	<b>Schedule</b> Manage your schedule on handset calendar. <b>P. 10-3</b>
<b>Yahoo! Keitai Sites</b> A special portal site for SoftBank handsets enhances your Internet browsing experience. <b>P. 6-3</b>	<b>Graphic Mail</b> Create HTML messages by changing font and background colors, inserting images, etc. <b>P. 5-4</b>	<b>Gaming Device</b> Play S! Appli games downloaded from Yahoo! Keitai sites. <b>P. 9-6</b>	<b>S! Quick News</b> Subscribe to content and receive automatic updates regularly. <b>P. 6-12</b>



# Intellectual Property Rights

- Duplicating, modifying or publicly transmitting copyright-protected contents (e.g. text, images, music, software) photographed or downloaded from websites without the permission of the copyright holders is prohibited by copyright laws, with the exception that the duplication or quotation of those is made only for personal use.

Shooting or recording a demonstration, performance or exhibition may be prohibited in some cases even if it is for personal use.

Shooting a photo of a person using this product without his or her permission, or posting a photo of a person you shot on websites without his or her permission may constitute an infringement of portrait rights.

- Video Call, S! Appli, S! Mail, S! Loop, S! Quick News, Graphic Mail and PC Site Browser are registered trademarks or trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.
- SOFTBANK, SoftBank and the SoftBank logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and other countries.
- Yahoo! and the Yahoo! and Y! logos are registered trademarks or trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:  
4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773  
5,101,501 5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073  
5,228,054 5,535,239 5,267,261 5,544,196  
5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338 5,600,754  
5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569  
5,710,784 5,778,338

- T9® is trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Nuance Communications, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and/or other countries.



- The microSD™ logo is a trademark.



- This product is licensed complying with MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, and you are permitted to use personally and for the nonprofit purpose in the following situations:

- To record a movie based on the standard of MPEG-4 Visual (MPEG-4 Video)
- To play MPEG-4 Video recorded by the consumer engaged in the nonprofit activities
- To play MPEG-4 Video provided by the provider licensed by MPEG-LA

When you use it for other purposes, such as promotion, in-house information and profit activity, contact the U.S. corporation MPEG LA, LLC.

- This product contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ Player under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated.



Copyright© 1995 - 2008 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved.

Adobe, Flash and Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

- QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.



- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002 - 2008 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.  
JBlend and JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.



- Java and all Java-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of US Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.



- Chaku-Uta® and Chaku-Uta Full® are registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

- This product contains NetFront Mobile Client Suite of ACCESS CO., LTD.



ACCESS, ACCESS logo and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in the United States, Japan and other countries.  
©2008 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

- This product is equipped with IrFront by ACCESS CO., LTD. as the infrared data exchange function.  
Copyright© 1996 - 2008 ACCESS CO., LTD.



ACCESS and IrFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and/or other countries.

- "My Signal", "Multitask", "Emotion-Expressing Mail", "NEC SUPER TOWN", "Privacy Angle", "Life History Viewer" and "Quick Info" are trademarks or registered trademarks of NEC Corporation.

- Powered By Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™  
MASCOT CAPSULE® are registered trademarks of HI CORPORATION.

- G-GUIDE, G-GUIDE MOBILE and their logos are registered trademarks in Japan of U.S. Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates.

- IrSimple™, IrSS™ or IrSimpleShot™ are trademarks of Infrared Data Association®.

- Full Browser is implemented by Pícel Technologies.

Pícel, Pícel Powered, Pícel Browser, Pícel Viewer, Pícel File Viewer, Pícel Document Viewer, Pícel PDF Viewer and Pícel cube logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pícel Technologies.



- Dialog Clarity and WOW technologies are industrialized based on the license from SRS Labs, Inc.



Dialog Clarity, SRS, WOW and the (●) symbol are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.

- This product contains software licensed complying with GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc. For more details, see "readme.txt" in the "GPL · LGPL等について" folder on the bundled CD-ROM. ("readme.txt" is only available in Japanese version.)

- This product is equipped with the font "FontAvenue" product by NEC Corporation.

FontAvenue is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.



## Intellectual Property Rights

- This product is antibacterial-coated.  
Antibacterial part: Handset body (excluding Display, keys and terminals)  
Inorganic antimicrobial agent, coating: JP0122112A0003N/  
JP0122112A0017D/JP0122112A0020M  
The SIAA logo indicates the quality control and information disclosure for this product conform to the guidelines of the Society of Industrial Technology for Antimicrobial Articles, as a result of evaluations conducted under ISO 22196.
- ©ATR-Trek Co., Ltd.
- The other company names and brand names described in this guide are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.









# Table of Contents

Before Using This Guide.....	i
Search Guide.....	ii
Intellectual Property Rights.....	iv
Table of Contents.....	viii
Package Contents.....	x
Safety Precautions.....	xi
General Notes.....	xxii

## 1 Getting Started

Handset Parts.....	1-2
Display.....	1-7
USIM Card.....	1-9
Battery & Charger.....	1-12
Power On/Off.....	1-16
Mobile Manners.....	1-18
Security Codes.....	1-19
Other Basic Information.....	1-20

## 2 Basic Operations

Menu Operations.....	2-2
Multitask.....	2-8
Text Entry.....	2-10
Phone Book.....	2-18
Advanced Features.....	2-25

## 3 Calling

Overview.....	3-2
Voice Call.....	3-3
Video Call.....	3-7
Call Logs.....	3-10
Speed Dial.....	3-12
Calling While Abroad (Global Roaming).....	3-13
Optional Services.....	3-14
Advanced Features.....	3-16

## 4 Security

PIN Settings.....	4-2
Prohibiting Unauthorized Handset Use.....	4-3
Prohibiting Outgoing/ Incoming Calls.....	4-5
Setting Secret Data.....	4-6

## 5 Mail

Overview.....	5-2
Sending Messages.....	5-3

## Receiving & Opening

Messages.....	5-6
Handling Messages.....	5-9
Advanced Features.....	5-14

## 6 Internet

Overview.....	6-2
Yahoo! Keitai.....	6-3
PC Site Browser.....	6-5
Page Operations.....	6-8
Bookmarks & Saved Pages... S! Quick News & S! Loop (Japanese).....	6-10 6-12
Advanced Features.....	6-13

## 7 Camera

Overview.....	7-2
Capturing Still Images.....	7-4
Recording Videos.....	7-5
Various Camera Features.....	7-7
Advanced Features.....	7-9



## 8 TV

About TV .....	8-2
Initial Setup .....	8-4
Watching TV .....	8-5
Recording/Playing Programs .....	8-7
View/Record Timer .....	8-9
Advanced Features .....	8-11

## 9 Music Player & S! Appli

About Music Player .....	9-2
Music Playback .....	9-4
S! Appli .....	9-6
Advanced Features .....	9-8

## 10 Tools

Life History Viewer .....	10-2
Schedule .....	10-3
To Do List .....	10-6
Text Memo .....	10-8
Voice Recorder .....	10-9
Calculator .....	10-10

Alarm .....	10-11
Bar Code Reader .....	10-13
Text Reader .....	10-15
Advanced Features .....	10-18

## 11 Data Management

About Data Folder .....	11-2
Accessing Files .....	11-3
Editing Files .....	11-7
File & Folder Management .....	11-9
About Memory Card .....	11-10
Managing Memory Cards .....	11-11
Advanced Features .....	11-14

## 12 Connectivity

Infrared .....	12-2
PC Connection .....	12-5

## 13 Customization

Clock, Display & Sounds .....	13-2
Phone Book & Calls .....	13-16

Mail .....	13-21
Internet .....	13-25
TV .....	13-29
Camera .....	13-33
Player & S! Appli .....	13-35
Other Settings .....	13-37

## 14 Appendix

Multitask Combinations .....	14-2
Software Update .....	14-4
Troubleshooting .....	14-5
Text Entry Key Assignments .....	14-9
Kuten Code List .....	14-12
Menu List .....	14-18
Specifications .....	14-31
Index .....	14-34
Warranty & After Sales Service .....	14-45
Customer Service .....	14-46

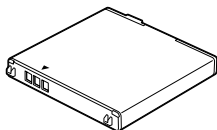


# Package Contents

The following items are included in the package with handset.

For additional information on accessories, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-46).

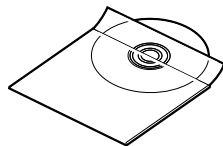
■ **Battery (NEBAH1)**



■ **Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable (NELAH1)**



■ **Utility Software (CD-ROM)\*1**



■ **Instruction Manuals (NEYAH1)\*2** ■ **Warranty (Handset)**

SoftBank 820N/821N supports microSD™ memory card (hereinafter referred to as “memory card”). Purchase a memory card to use related functions.

\*1 Complimentary sample not available for purchase. Updates/upgrades may become available via SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>) without prior notification. Please check for the newest versions and download as required.




\*2 User Guide (Japanese), Start Book (Japanese) and First Step Guide









# Safety Precautions

- To ensure proper use of your handset, read these safety precautions carefully before use. Keep this guide for future reference.
- Observe these safety precautions to prevent injuries and damages to property.
- Understand the meanings of the signs and symbols shown below.

## ■ Signs

 <b>DANGER</b>	Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use
 <b>WARNING</b>	Risk of death or serious injury from improper use
 <b>CAUTION</b>	Risk of injury or damage to property from improper use

## ■ Symbols

	Action is prohibited.
	Disassembly is prohibited.
	Handling with wet hands is prohibited.
	Wetting the product is prohibited.
	Action is compulsory.
	Power cord must be unplugged.

SoftBank accepts no liability for any loss from missed calls, etc. due to malfunction, erroneous operation or failure of product.








# **DANGER**

### ■ Handset, Battery, Charger (Sold Separately), USIM Card & Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable

	<b>Do not leave handset in places subject to high temperatures (near an open flame, in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day).</b> May cause deformation or malfunction; or may cause battery to leak, overheat, rupture, ignite or suffer performance loss and reduced service life. Also, the outer housing may become hot resulting in burns.
	<b>Do not disassemble/modify/solder handset.</b> May cause fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction. Also, battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.
	<b>Do not wet handset.</b> Exposing handset to fluids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, injury, etc.
	<b>Use SoftBank specified devices (P. x) only.</b> Use of non-specified devices may cause battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; or may result in malfunction or fire. Use of non-specified USIM Card may cause loss of data or malfunction.




### ■ Battery

	<b>Do not let wires or other metal objects come in contact with the terminal. Do not carry or store battery with metal necklaces, etc.</b> May cause battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.
	<b>If you have difficulty in attaching battery to handset, do not force battery into place. Check the direction of battery before attaching it.</b> Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.
	<b>Do not throw battery into a fire.</b> May cause battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.
	<b>Do not puncture battery with a nail, hit it with a hammer or step on it.</b> May cause battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.
	<b>If battery fluid gets into your eyes, immediately rinse your eyes with clean water without rubbing them, and consult a doctor.</b> Failing to do so may result in losing your eyesight.



## **WARNING**

### ■ Handset, Battery, Charger (Sold Separately), USIM Card & Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable

	<p><b>Do not place handset, battery, charger (sold separately) or USIM Card in a microwave oven or pressure cooker.</b></p> <p>May cause battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; may cause handset/charger to overheat, emit smoke or ignite; or may damage the circuit component.</p>
	<p><b>Do not throw handset or expose it to excessive shock.</b></p> <p>May cause battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; or may cause malfunction or fire.</p>
	<p><b>Keep conductive materials (e.g. metal pieces, pencil lead, etc.) away from Charger Terminals and External Device Port.</b></p> <p>May cause short circuit, resulting in fire or malfunction.</p>



Turn off handset when entering gas stations or other places where flammable gases generate. Do not charge battery in such places. Gases may ignite.



If you notice an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration, deformation, etc. while using, charging or storing handset, immediately do the following:

1. Unplug charger from AC outlet.
  2. Turn handset power off.
  3. Remove battery from handset.
- Continuing use may cause handset to overheat, rupture or ignite; or may cause battery to leak.

### ■ Handset



**Do not point infrared beam at anyone's eyes.**

May cause eye injury. Do not direct infrared beam toward another infrared device as this may interfere with the device operation.










**Do not place handset on the dashboard close to airbags.**

In case of airbag inflation, handset may hit passengers resulting in injury, malfunction or breakage.







## Safety Precautions

	<p><b>If you are wearing electronic medical equipment, do not carry handset in your breast pocket or inner pocket.</b></p> <p>Using handset near electronic medical equipment may cause the equipment to malfunction.</p>		<p><b>Keep handset away from your ear when calling in handsfree mode. When playing games or music with Earphone-Microphone connected to handset, adjust the volume properly.</b></p> <p>If the volume is too high, it may impair your hearing. If surrounding sounds cannot be heard clearly, it may result in an accident.</p>
	<p><b>Do not allow fluids such as water, metal pieces or flammable materials to enter USIM Card Slot or microSD™ Memory Card Slot of handset.</b></p> <p>May cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.</p>		<p><b>If you have a weak heart, be careful with incoming call vibrator and ring volume settings.</b></p> <p>These may affect your heart.</p>
	<p><b>Do not swing handset by its strap, etc.</b></p> <p>Handset may strike you or people around you, resulting in injury, malfunction or breakage.</p>		<p><b>If thunder is heard outside, immediately turn handset power off and move to a safe place.</b></p> <p>Failing to do so may attract lightning and cause electric shock.</p>
	<p><b>Keep handset power off in places where use of mobile phones is prohibited, such as on an airplane or in a hospital.</b></p> <p>May affect electronic devices or electronic medical equipment. Disable the auto power-on function before turning off handset.</p> <p>Observe the instructions of individual medical institutions about use of mobile phones.</p> <p>Handset operations aboard aircraft may be punishable by law.</p>		



	<p><b>Keep handset power off near high-precision electronic devices or devices using weak signals.</b></p> <p>Failing to do so may interfere with the device operation.</p> <p>* Examples of such devices: Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted defibrillators and other electronic medical equipment; fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control devices</p> <p>If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker, implanted defibrillator or other electronic medical equipment, consult with the individual medical device manufacturer or distributor about the possible influence of radio waves.</p>
	<p><b>If Display or camera lens is damaged, be careful of broken glass pieces or exposed internal components.</b></p> <p>The shatter-proof film prevents Display/camera lens from shattering; however touching broken glass edges and exposed pieces may cause injury.</p>






## Battery







	<p><b>If battery is deformed or damaged by a fall or other external shock, immediately stop using it.</b></p> <p>Continuing use may cause battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; or may cause malfunction or fire.</p>
	<p><b>If battery is not fully charged after the specified charging time has elapsed, stop charging it.</b></p> <p>If you continue charging, battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.</p>
	<p><b>If battery leaks or emits an unusual odor, immediately stop using it and keep it away from fire.</b></p> <p>Battery fluid is flammable and could ignite causing fire or explosion.</p>
	<p><b>If you notice an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration, deformation, etc. while using, charging or storing battery, carefully remove it from handset, and contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 14-46).</b></p> <p>Continuing use may cause battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.</p>






## Safety Precautions

### ■ Charger (Sold Separately)

	<b>Do not use charger (sold separately) if the cord is damaged.</b> May cause electric shock, overheating or fire.
	<b>Do not use AC Charger or Desktop Holder in humid places such as in bathrooms.</b> May cause electric shock.
	<b>If thunder is heard, do not touch handset or charger (sold separately).</b> May attract lightning and cause electric shock.
	<b>Do not short-circuit Charger Terminals when charger (sold separately) is plugged into an AC outlet. Do not touch Charger Terminals with your fingers, etc.</b> May cause fire, malfunction, electric shock or injury.
	<b>Place charger (sold separately) and Desktop Holder on a stable surface during charging. Do not cover charger (sold separately) and Desktop Holder with clothing or bedding.</b> Handset may come off from Desktop Holder; or heat may build up resulting in fire or malfunction.

	<b>Do not place heavy objects on the charger (sold separately) cord.</b> May cause electric shock or fire.
	<b>Do not touch the charger (sold separately) cord or AC outlet with wet hands.</b> May cause electric shock.
	<b>Use the specified power supply and voltage.</b> Failing to do so may cause fire or malfunction. • AC Charger: 100 to 240 V AC (for household AC outlets only)
	<b>Wipe off any dust on the power plug.</b> Failing to do so may cause fire.
	<b>When plugging AC Charger into an AC outlet, make sure that no metal objects (e.g. metal straps) contact with the plug or socket.</b> If that happens, it may cause electric shock, short circuit or fire.
	<b>Do not pull the cord by force but hold the plug when unplugging charger (sold separately) from AC outlet.</b> Pulling the cord may damage the cord resulting in electric shock or fire.



	<p><b>Unplug the power plug from AC outlet if handset is not used for an extended period of time.</b></p> <p>Failing to do so may cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.</p>
	<p><b>If water or other fluid gets into charger (sold separately), immediately unplug it from AC outlet.</b></p> <p>Failing to do so may cause electric shock, smoke emission or fire.</p>
	<p><b>Unplug charger (sold separately) from AC outlet before cleaning.</b></p> <p>Failing to do so may cause electric shock.</p>

### ■ Handset Use Near Electronic Medical Equipment

- The following information conforms to “The Guidelines on Use of Mobile Phones and Other Devices to Prevent Electromagnetic Wave Interference with Electronic Medical Equipment” (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan), as well as refers to “The Investigative Research Report on the Influence of Electromagnetic Waves on Medical Equipment” (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).






#### Observe the following in medical institutions:

- Do not bring mobile phones into an operating room, ICU (Intensive Care Unit) or CCU (Coronary Care Unit).
- Turn off mobile phones in hospital wards.
- Turn off mobile phones in lobbies if there is electronic medical equipment nearby.
- Observe the instructions of individual medical institutions and do not use or bring mobile phones into prohibited areas.
- Disable the auto power-on function before turning off mobile phones.







## Safety Precautions

	<p><b>Keep handset power off in crowded places such as in packed trains because a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be nearby.</b></p> <p>Radio waves may interfere with the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators.</p>
	<p><b>If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator, carry and use handset at a distance of at least 22 centimeters away from the implanted area.</b></p> <p>Radio waves may interfere with the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators.</p>
	<p><b>When using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators outside of medical institutions (for home treatment, etc.), consult with the individual medical device manufacturer or distributor about the possible influence of radio waves.</b></p> <p>Radio waves may interfere with the operation of electronic medical equipment.</p>





## CAUTION



### ■ Handset, Battery, Charger (Sold Separately), USIM Card & Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable





	<p><b>Do not place handset on a slope or unstable surface.</b></p> <p>May cause handset to fall resulting in injury or malfunction.</p>
	<p><b>Do not store handset in humid or dusty places.</b></p> <p>May cause malfunction.</p>
	<p><b>When a child uses handset, it is recommended that a parent provides proper instructions to the child and keeps an eye on how the child uses handset.</b></p> <p>Failing to do so may cause injury, etc.</p>
	<p><b>Keep handset out of reach of infants.</b></p> <p>Failing to do so may result in small parts being accidentally swallowed, or may cause injury.</p>



	<p><b>Be careful when using handset for an extended period of time with charger (sold separately) connected.</b></p> <p>Handset, battery and charger (sold separately) may become warm if you operate handset for an extended period of time while charging. If you keep touching the warm part for a long time, you may suffer redness, itching, irritation or low-temperature burns on your skin, depending on your constitution and physical condition.</p>
	<p><b>Be careful not to pinch your fingers in the hinge when opening handset.</b></p> <p>Failing to do so may cause injury.</p>

## ■ Handset

	<p><b>Keep magnetic cards away from handset and make sure that a magnetic card is not trapped when closing handset.</b></p> <p>Failing to do so may cause magnetic data on a cash card, credit card, telephone card or floppy disk to be lost.</p>
	<p><b>Keep magnetized objects away from handset.</b></p> <p>Strong magnetism nearby may cause operation errors.</p>

	<p><b>If Display is broken and liquid crystal leaks, do not put it in your mouth, inhale it or put it on your skin.</b></p> <p><b>If liquid crystal enters your eyes or mouth, immediately rinse your eyes or mouth with clean water and consult a doctor. If liquid crystal adheres to your skin or clothing, immediately wipe it off with alcohol and then wash it with soap and water.</b></p> <p>May result in losing your eyesight or damaging your skin.</p>
	<p><b>When a ringtone or melody is playing, do not bring the speaker close to your ear.</b></p> <p>May impair your hearing.</p>
	<p><b>Using handset in a car may, in some rare cases, affect electronic equipment of the car, depending on the type of car.</b></p> <p>If that happens, do not use handset in the car to ensure safe driving.</p>
	<p><b>Be careful not to pinch your fingers or strap when opening and closing handset.</b></p> <p>May cause injury or damage.</p>



## Safety Precautions





**Depending on your constitution and physical condition, irritations, rash, eczema, etc. may develop on your skin. If that happens, immediately stop using handset and consult a doctor.**

The following materials and surface treatments are used.

Part			Material	Surface Treatment
Outer housing	Display side		PA resin + Stainless sheet	Acrylic UV cured coating
	Keypad side		PC resin + Stainless sheet	Acrylic UV cured coating
	My Signal Display side	820N	PA resin + Stainless sheet	Acrylic UV cured coating
		821N	(Transparent) PC resin + Stainless sheet	Acrylic UV cured coating
My Signal Display metallic part		821N only	ABS resin	Evaporation + Acrylic UV cured coating
Multi Selector Center Key			PC resin	Evaporation + Acrylic UV cured coating
Battery compartment	Screw		Steel	Nickel plating
	USIM Card lock cover		Stainless sheet	—
	Battery terminal		Copper alloy	Gold plating
Charger Terminals			Stainless sheet	Gold plating
Battery (terminal)			Epoxy resin (glass epoxy)	Gold plating






## Battery

	<p><b>Do not dispose of batteries as municipal waste.</b></p> <p>May cause fire or environmental destruction. Bring used batteries to the nearest SoftBank Shop or recycling center after insulating the terminals with tape. Be sure to observe local regulations on battery disposal.</p>
	<p><b>If battery fluid gets on you skin or clothing, immediately stop using battery and rinse the fluid off with clean water.</b></p> <p>Battery fluid may injure your skin.</p>

## USIM Card

	<p><b>Be careful with the cut section of IC chip when removing USIM Card.</b></p> <p>May injure your hands.</p>
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## Charger (Sold Separately)

	<p><b>Do not charge a wet battery.</b></p> <p>May cause battery to overheat, ignite or rupture.</p>
 	<p><b>Unplug charger (sold separately) from AC outlet when charging is finished.</b></p> <p>Failing to do so may cause fire or malfunction.</p>



# General Notes

## Usage Basics

- As handset uses radio waves, it cannot be used where signals are weak or when it is out of service area. If you move to a place with poor signal reception (e.g. beside/inside a building, in a tunnel, underground or mountain area), calls may be suddenly cut off.
- Take care not to disturb other people when using handset in public places.
- If you receive a call while walking, move to a safe place before answering.
- SoftBank accepts no liability for any damages resulting from loss or alteration of data stored on your handset or microSD™ memory card. We recommend you back up important data such as Phone Book entries and image/sound files.
- Handset is a wireless station under Japanese Radio Law. You may be requested to submit your handset for inspection based on this law.
- Using handset near a landline phone, TV or radio may affect the operation of these devices. Use handset as far as possible from these devices.
- Be aware of eavesdropping. Handset employs a digital signal that provides a high level of privacy protection. However, the possibility of eavesdropping by a third party using special means cannot be ruled out.
  - \* Eavesdropping:  
Interception of radio signals by a third party during communication, either intentionally or accidentally
- Before watching TV on handset, move to a well-lighted place and keep an appropriate distance between your eyes and TV screen to protect your eyesight.
- Do not trap a strap or other objects when closing handset. Doing so may cause malfunction or damage handset.
- Keep a separate record of data you saved to handset. SoftBank accepts no liability for any loss of data stored on your handset.
- Charge battery at an ambient temperature of 5 to 35°C.
- If you use handset for the first time or have not used it for a long time, charge battery before using handset.
- The available operating time of a battery varies depending on the usage environment and the condition of battery itself.
- When the life of a battery is near its end, it may expand a little, which is not a malfunction.
- Do not charge battery:
  - At an ambient temperature out of the appropriate range (5 to 35°C)
  - In a humid, dusty or shaky place
  - Near a landline phone, TV or radio
- Although charger (sold separately) may become warm while charging, it is not a malfunction. You can keep using it.
- Using handset on trains or other public transportation may, in some rare cases, affect their electronic devices.
- A call may not be connected or you may hear noises:
  - In an extremely cold place (e.g. freezer storehouse) where handset may not operate normally
  - Near metal furniture which may interfere with signal transmission



- Near electromagnetic sources or magnetized items, including electric products, audio-visual equipment and office appliances (e.g. computer, microwave oven, speaker, TV set, radio, fax machine, fluorescent lamp, word processor, electric kotatsu, inverter-driven air conditioner, electromagnetic cooker)
- Do not rub or scratch Display with a metal object, etc. Doing so may damage Display resulting in malfunction or breakage.
- Do not subject handset to excessive shock. Do not deform Charger Terminals. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Do not bring handset near strong magnetic force. Doing so may cause malfunction.

## Inside Cars

- Do not use handset while driving. Doing so may compromise safe driving and cause an accident. Handset operations in a car may be punishable by law.
- Using handset in a car may in some rare cases affect electronic equipment of the car, depending on the type of car. Confirm with your car dealer whether sufficient magnetic protection measures are implemented in your car. Failing to do so may compromise safe driving.
- Before using handset, stop the car in a safe place where parking is permitted.

## Aboard Aircraft

Never use (or even power on) handset on an aircraft. Doing so may compromise flight safety and cause an accident. Handset operations aboard aircraft may be punishable by law.

## Handling

- Do not wet handset. Handset, battery, charger (sold separately) and USIM Card are not waterproof. Do not use them in the rain or in other humid places (e.g. bathrooms). If you carry handset placed on your body, moisture from sweat may corrode internal parts and cause malfunction. Damage caused by wetting handset will not be covered by the warranty and repairing may be impossible.
- Wipe with a dry soft cloth (e.g. eyeglass cloth) to clean handset. The color LCD of handset has a special coating to enhance the visibility. Rubbing Display with a dry cloth may scratch the surface. Clean handset carefully using a dry soft cloth for eyeglasses. If moisture or soil is left on Display, the coating may be stained or peel off. Do not use alcohol, thinner, benzene or detergent, as it may cause discoloration and remove printed logos.
- Occasionally clean the terminals with a dry cotton swab or cloth. Soiled terminals may cause poor contacts resulting in power failure and insufficient charging.
- Do not place handset near the vent of an air conditioner. Condensation may form due to abrupt temperature changes, leading to internal corrosion and malfunction.
- Be careful about handset use while driving. A penalty will be charged if you hold a mobile phone and use it while driving.



## General Notes

- Do not apply excessive force to handset and battery. Placing handset in a bag packed with many items or sitting down with handset in your pocket may damage Display, internal circuit board or battery, and cause malfunction. If you do so with an external device connected to External Device Port, the connector may be damaged and cause malfunction.
- Avoid extremely cold and high temperatures. Use handset at an ambient temperature of 5 to 35°C, and a humidity of 45 to 85 %. If handset is left in an extremely hot place, handset may be turned off automatically.
- When connecting an external device to External Device Port, do not insert the connector into the port at an angle or pull the cord forcibly. Doing so may cause malfunction or breakage.
- Although handset becomes warm while being used or charged, it is not a malfunction. You can keep using it.
- Do not leave the camera lens exposed to direct sunlight. Doing so may discolor or burn the optical element.
- Keep the covers of External Device Port and microSD™ Memory Card Slot closed. If they are left open, dust or water may get inside handset causing malfunction.
- Do not use handset without battery cover. Doing so may cause battery to come off or may result in malfunction or breakage.
- Do not affix thick stickers or labels to the Display or keypad side. Doing so may result in malfunction.
- Battery is a consumable item. Replace battery with a new one if the operation time becomes extremely short even after it is fully charged. Purchase a new battery designated for handset.
- Do not store empty battery. Doing so may degrade performance and shorten life of battery.
- Do not leave battery removed or uncharged for an extended period of time. Doing so may alter or erase the settings and data you saved. SoftBank accepts no liability for any damages resulting from such loss or alteration.
- When removing Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable or AC Charger from External Device Port, do not pull the cord, hold the connector. Pulling the cord may result in wire breakage or malfunction.
- Charge battery at an ambient temperature of 5 to 35°C.
- If you use an outlet with pullout prevention feature, refer to the instruction manual of the outlet.
- Do not insert USIM Card with a sticker or label attached to it into handset. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Do not insert the connector of Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable by force; as it may damage the connector. Connecting Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable is only possible when the connector is inserted from a proper angle with correct orientation. Check the angle and orientation again when you find difficulty in inserting the connector.
- Your voice cannot be sent to the other party if earphones with no microphone are connected to the earphone terminal of Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable.
- When stereo earphones are connected to Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable, you hear the same monaural sound through the both earphones during calls, etc. When a monaural earphone is connected to Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable, you can only hear the sound of the left audio channel through the earphone.



- Do not apply strong shock to Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable or throw it.
- Do not place a heavy object on Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable.

## Camera

Observe proper etiquette, laws and regulations regarding camera use in public places. Offending public order and morals by using handset may be subject to penalties based on applicable laws and regulations (e.g. nuisance prevention ordinance by municipal governments).

## Copyrights

Copyrighted materials, such as music, images, computer programs and databases, and their respective copyright holders are protected by copyright laws. Duplication of copyrighted materials is permitted only for individual or home use. Duplications (including data conversion), modifications, transfers or network distributions of copyrighted materials for purposes other than stated above without permission of the copyright holders constitute an infringement of copyrights and violation of copyright holders' rights, potentially causing claims for reparations or criminal punishment.

Always observe applicable copyright laws when making copies using handset and recording materials using handset camera.


The software installed in this handset is a copyrighted material and involves copyrights and human rights of copyright holders which are protected by copyright laws. Do not duplicate, modify, alter, detach from the hardware, disassemble, decompile or reverse-engineer the software in whole or in part by yourself, nor allow any third party to do the same, either.

## Functional Limitations

After changing to a different model, subscription cancellation or a long period of not using handset, the following functions become unavailable:

- Camera
- Music Player
- S! Appli
- TV

## Caution

Do not use handset if it has been altered. Using the altered device is a violation of the Radio Law. This handset is certified to conform to the technical standards for specific radio equipment based on the Radio Law, and Technical Conformity Mark  is printed on the model name seal as certification. If you remove screws and make alterations inside of handset, the technical standards conformity certification becomes invalid. Do not use handset with the certification invalid, as it is a violation of the Radio Law.



### SAR Certification Information

820N and 821N meet the technical standards set by Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC) regarding radio wave absorption by a human body.

These technical standards have been established on a scientific basis to prevent radio waves emitted from wireless devices such as mobile phones that are used close to a human head from affecting human health. These standards require that the SAR (Specific Absorption Rate), an indicator of the amount of average radio frequency energy absorbed in the side of a human head, must not exceed the permissive value of 2 W/kg\*. This value includes a substantial safety margin to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and physical size. The value is equal to the international guideline recommended by the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) that has a cooperative relationship with the World Health Organization (WHO).

\* The technical standards are stipulated in the Radio Law (Article 14-2 of Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment).

The highest SAR value is 0.759 W/kg for 820N and 0.639 W/kg for 821N. This value was obtained in accordance with the MIC testing procedure with handset transmitting at its highest permitted power level. While there may be differences in SAR levels among individual products, they all meet the MIC's permissible value. Because mobile phones are designed to operate at their minimum power level required to communicate with base stations, the actual SAR of handset during a call is usually below the highest value.

For further information about SAR, see the following websites:

- Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC)  
<http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/index.htm>
- Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)  
<http://www.arib-empf.org/index02.html> (Japanese)



## SoftBank's Body SAR Policy

- \* Body SAR: The SAR value at the maximum transmission power when continuously talking with handset placed on the body and using earphone-microphone.
- \*\* Specific Absorption Rate (SAR): The value measured when having talked continuously for 6 minutes.
- \*\*\* Placement on the body: Measurements are taken with the rear of handset facing the body at a distance of 1.5 cm as the ordinary handset position. In order to comply with radio frequency exposure requirements, use an accessory (e.g. belt clip, holster) that does not contain metallic parts to maintain a 1.5 cm separation between the body and handset.

For further information, see the following SoftBank Website:

<http://www.softbankmobile.co.jp/corporate/legal/emf/emf03.html> (Japanese)

## European RF Exposure Information

This handset 820N/821N is a radio transmitter and receiver. This product has been confirmed not to exceed the limits recommended by international guidelines for radio frequency.

These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) and include a substantial safety margin to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The influence on the human body of radio waves emitted from mobile phones is measured employing a unit known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg. The maximum SAR value for this model handset, when placed on the body, is 0.330 W/kg for 820N and 0.331 W/kg for 821N.\*

Since the SAR is measured at the highest transmitting power level, the actual SAR during a call is usually much smaller. This is because mobile phones are designed to operate at their minimum power levels necessary to communicate with base stations.

The World Health Organization (WHO) has stated that present scientific information about mobile phone use does not indicate any adverse effects on the human body. They recommend limiting the talking time or using a handsfree device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body to reduce influence of exposure to radio waves.

Additional information can be found at the WHO website:

<http://www.who.int/emf>

- \* Measurements with handset placed on the body are carried out in accordance with the FCC standards. The values are based on European requirements.



### Declaration of Conformity

CE 0168

The products "820N" and "821N" are declared to conform with the essential requirements of European Union Directive 1999/5/EC Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 3.1(a), 3.1(b) and 3.2.

The Declaration of Conformity can be found on the following website:  
<http://www.n-keitai.com/>

### Minding Mobile Manners

Use your handset responsibly. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn handset power off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from use in restaurants, lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.



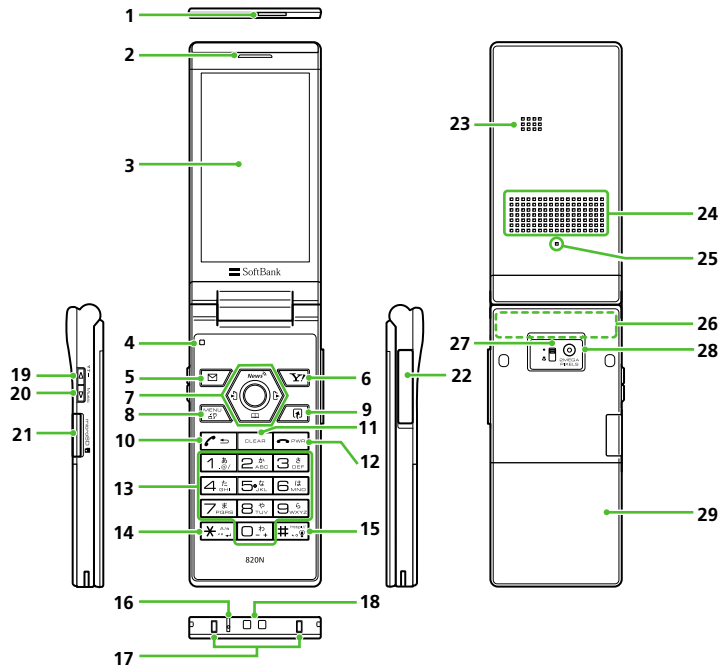
# Getting Started

<b>Handset Parts</b> .....	<b>1-2</b>	<b>Security Codes</b> .....	<b>1-19</b>
Basic Key Operations .....	1-4	Handset Code.....	1-19
<b>Display</b> .....	<b>1-7</b>	Center Access Code.....	1-19
Display Indicators .....	1-7	Network Password .....	1-19
External Display (My Signal Display) .....	1-8	<b>Other Basic Information</b> .....	<b>1-20</b>
<b>USIM Card</b> .....	<b>1-9</b>	Checking Battery Level .....	1-20
Before Using USIM Card .....	1-9	My Phone Number.....	1-20
Other Notes on USIM Cards.....	1-9	Side Key Guard .....	1-20
USIM PINs.....	1-10		
USIM Card Installation .....	1-11		
<b>Battery &amp; Charger</b> .....	<b>1-12</b>		
Notes on Battery Charging.....	1-12		
Battery Installation .....	1-12		
Charging Battery.....	1-14		
<b>Power On/Off</b> .....	<b>1-16</b>		
Power On.....	1-16		
Power Off .....	1-17		
<b>Mobile Manners</b> .....	<b>1-18</b>		
Activating Manner Mode .....	1-18		

# 1



## ● SoftBank 820N



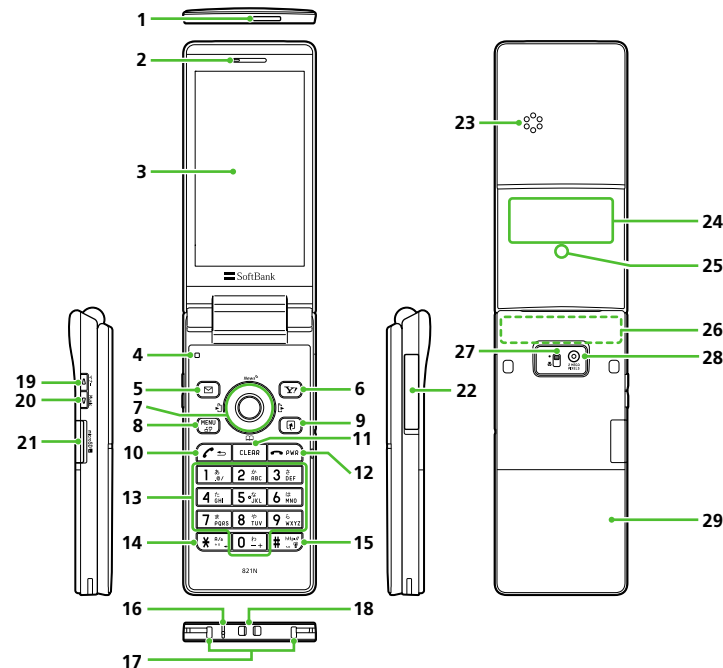
For better signal reception, do not cover Internal Antenna with hands or anything else.

- |    |                                                      |         |
|----|------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| 1  | Infrared Port                                        |         |
| 2  | Earpiece                                             |         |
| 3  | Display                                              |         |
| 4  | Light Sensor                                         |         |
| 5  | Mail Key                                             | *       |
| 6  | Yahoo! Keitai Key                                    | *       |
| 7  | Multi Selector                                       | &  *    |
| 8  | Menu Key                                             | *       |
| 9  | Shortcut Key                                         | *       |
| 10 | Send Key                                             | *       |
| 11 | Clear/Back Key                                       | *       |
| 12 | Power/End Key                                        | *       |
| 13 | Keypad                                               | 1 - 9 * |
| 14 | *Key                                                 | *       |
| 15 | # /Manner Key                                        | *       |
| 16 | Microphone                                           |         |
| 17 | Charger Terminals                                    |         |
| 18 | Strap Eyelet                                         |         |
| 19 | Volume Up/Manner Key                                 | *       |
| 20 | Volume Down/Music Key                                | *       |
| 21 | Memory Card Slot                                     |         |
| 22 | External Device Port                                 |         |
| 23 | Speaker                                              |         |
| 24 | My Signal Display                                    |         |
| 25 | Charging Indicator/Camera Indicator/<br>Illumination |         |
| 26 | Internal Antenna                                     |         |
| 27 | Macro Switch                                         |         |
| 28 | Camera                                               |         |
| 29 | Battery Cover                                        |         |

\* Key illustrations are simplified and differ in appearance from actual handset keys.



## ● SoftBank 821N



For better signal reception, do not cover Internal Antenna with hands or anything else.















1	Infrared Port	
2	Earpiece	
3	Display	
4	Light Sensor	
5	Mail Key	*
6	Yahoo! Keitai Key	*
7	Multi Selector	&  *
8	Menu Key	*
9	Shortcut Key	*
10	Send Key	*
11	Clear/Back Key	*
12	Power/End Key	*
13	Keypad	1 - 9 *
14	* Key	*
15	#/Manner Key	*
16	Microphone	
17	Charger Terminals	
18	Strap Eyelet	
19	Volume Up/Manner Key	*
20	Volume Down/Music Key	*
21	Memory Card Slot	
22	External Device Port	
23	Speaker	
24	My Signal Display	
25	Charging Indicator/Camera Indicator/ Illumination	
26	Internal Antenna	
27	Macro Switch	
28	Camera	
29	Battery Cover	














\* Key illustrations are simplified and differ in appearance from actual handset keys.



## Basic Key Operations
















### ● In Standby

No.	Operation	Description
5		Open Mail menu.
	Press and hold 	Compose a new message.
6		Access Yahoo! Keitai portal.
	Press and hold 	Open Yahoo! Keitai menu.
7		Open S! Quick News List.
	Press and hold 	Increase earpiece volume.
		Open Phone Book Search menu.
	Press and hold 	Decrease earpiece volume.
		Open Received Calls window.
	Press and hold 	Open Received Address List.
		Open Redial window.
	Press and hold 	Open Sent Address List.
		Enable desktop icon selection.
8		Open Main Menu.









No.	Operation	Description
9		Activate the function assigned to the key.
	Press and hold 	Assign a function to the key.
11	Press and hold 	Delete a desktop notification.
12	Press and hold 	Turn power on/off.
13	Press and hold 	Turn backlight on/off.
	Press and hold 	Set font type, thickness and size.
	Press and hold 	Turn Privacy Angle on/off.
	Press and hold 	Enter “+” (international access code).
15	Press and hold 	Set/cancel Manner Mode.
19		Show clock (when handset is closed).
	Press and hold 	Set/cancel Manner Mode.
20		Play messages on Answering Machine (when handset is open). Show clock (when handset is closed).
	Press and hold 	Activate Music Player.





## ●During Voice Calls

No.	Operation	Description
5		Turn handsfree on/off.
7		Search Phone Book by group.
	Press and hold 	Increase earpiece volume.
		Search Phone Book by column.
	Press and hold 	Decrease earpiece volume.
		Open Received Calls window.
		Open Redial window.
8		Open Task Switch window.
11		Hold call.
12		End call.
	Press and hold 	Turn power on/off.
15	Press and hold 	Set/cancel Manner Mode.
19		Increase earpiece volume.
20		Decrease earpiece volume.
	Press and hold 	Record other party's voice.

## ●During Text Entry

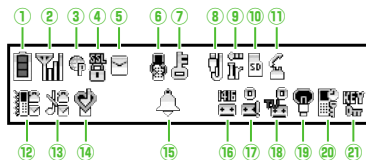
No.	Operation	Description
5		Toggle pictograph and symbol lists.
	Press and hold 	Access pictographs by category (S! Mail).
6		Toggle character entry modes (in 5-touch/T9 input mode). Toggle single-byte and double-byte characters (in 2-touch mode).
	Press and hold 	Toggle text input methods.
7		Insert line feed "↵" (when cursor is at the end of text).
		Add a space (when cursor is at the end of text).
10		Cycle characters on a key in reverse order (in 5-touch mode).
	Press and hold 	Undo last operation (conversion, pasting, cut, etc.) and return to the previous state.



No.	Operation	Description
14		Enter dakuten (゛)/handakuten (゜) (in 5-touch/2-touch mode). Toggle case of each character (in 5- touch/2-touch mode). Toggle upper case and lower case modes (when entering alphanumerics in T9 input mode).
	Press and hold 	Insert line feed "↵".



## Display Indicators



- ① Battery Level
- ② Signal Strength  
Out of Range (Out of Service Area/Out of Signal Range)  
Self Mode  
USIM Lock Active
- ③ Yahoo! Keitai Mode  
Yahoo! Keitai Communication in Progress  
Packet Transmission (No Data Transfer)  
Connecting to Network for Packet Transmission  
Packet Transmission (Sending/Receiving Data)
- ④ SSL Secured Site Connected
- ⑤ Unread Messages  
Handset Message Memory Full

- ⑥ USIM SMS Memory Full (when there are unread messages)  
Handset & USIM SMS Memory Full
- ⑦ Software Updated  
Dial Lock Active  
Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode  
Original Lock Active  
Original Lock Active in Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode
- ⑧ USB Cable Connected in Communication/microSD Mode  
microSD Mode  
Handsfree Device Connected in Communication/microSD Mode  
USB Cable & Handsfree Device Connected in Communication/microSD Mode
- ⑨ Infrared Transmission
- ⑩ Memory Card Inserted  
Invalid Memory Card Inserted  
Write-protect Memory Card Inserted  
microSD Reader/Writer in Use  
Accessing Memory Card
- ⑪ Voice Call  
Video Call  
Maximum Call Cost Limit Reached

- ⑫ Vibration Set for Incoming Calls & Messages  
Vibration Set for Incoming Calls/Messages
- ⑬ No Ringtone for Incoming Calls & Messages  
No Ringtone for Incoming Calls/Messages
- ⑭ Manner Mode
- ⑮ Alarm Set  
Alarm Set for Today (appears prior to set time.)
- ⑯ New Messages at Voice Mail Center
- ⑰ - Voice Messages on Answering Machine
- ⑱ - Video Messages on Answering Machine
- ⑲ Backlight Off  
Privacy Angle On (when Backlight is Off)
- ⑳ Keypad Lock Active
- ㉑ Side Key Guard On

### Tip

- To see indicator descriptions:

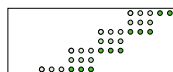
⇒ Settings ⇒ ⇒ Display ⇒  
 ⇒ Icons ⇒



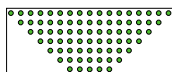
## External Display (My Signal Display)

Animations appear in My Signal Display to show handset status and new information.

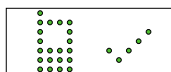
### ● Examples



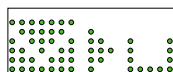
Handset Closed



Receiving Message



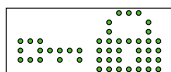
Missed Calls



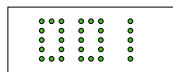
New Messages



Manner Mode Active



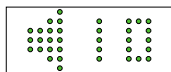
Keypad Lock Active



Track No.



Paused



Volume (Level 10)

### Tip

- Download My Signal animations via NEC SUPER TOWN (Japanese) as follows:

☞ ⇒ メニューリスト (Menu List) ⇒ ☐ ⇒ 辞書・ツール (Dictionaries/Tools) ⇒ ☐ ⇒ ケータイメーカー (Manufacturers) ⇒ ☐ ⇒ NEC SUPER TOWN ⇒ ☐

## More Features

### Customize

#### Display Settings

- Wallpaper
- Display Color Scheme
- Set Font Type
- Interface Language
- Guard from Prying Eyes

▶ P. 13-4

#### Backlight

- Set Backlight & Power Saving

▶ P. 13-7

#### Standby Indicators

- Enable Indicator Selector

▶ P. 13-10

#### My Signal Settings

- Set Animation
- Clock Pattern
- Show Clock during Charging
- Specify Clock Display Interval

▶ P. 13-10



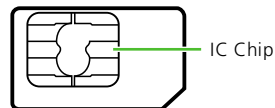
## Before Using USIM Card

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card that contains SoftBank customer information (phone number, etc.). A USIM Card must be inserted to use your handset.

- Store Phone Book entries and SMS on USIM Card.
- Insert USIM Card into other USIM-compatible SoftBank handsets to use information on Card.
- Do not apply excessive force when inserting/removing USIM Card.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damage caused by inserting USIM Card into other IC card readers/writers.
- USIM Card may become warm during use. This is not a malfunction.
- Keep IC chip clean.
- For details, refer to the manual supplied with your USIM Card.
- Do not drop USIM Card or subject to excessive shock. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Do not bend USIM Card or place heavy objects on it. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Avoid extreme temperatures.
- Do not scratch, carelessly touch or short-circuit the IC chip. Doing so may result in data loss or malfunction.
- Clean USIM Card with a dry soft cloth (such as is used for eyeglasses).

## Other Notes on USIM Cards

- USIM Cards are the property of SoftBank.
- USIM Cards will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Cards to SoftBank upon cancellation or suspension of service.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications and performance may change without prior notice.
- Keep a separate copy of data saved on your USIM Card. SoftBank is not liable for lost data.
- If USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend service immediately. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-46).
- S! Appli, downloaded videos, saved pages or other data saved on your handset or memory card may not be accessible after replacing USIM Card or upgrading handset. If a different USIM Card is inserted, the cookies and cache are cleared to protect personal information.





## USIM PINs

There are two security codes for USIM Cards: PIN1 and PIN2.

### PIN1

PIN1 is a four- to eight-digit code to prevent unauthorized handset use by a third party.

- Default PIN1 is 9999.
- PIN1 can be changed (P. 4-2).
- When **PIN1 code entry set** is set to **ON**, PIN1 must be entered each time handset is turned on to be used.

### PIN2

PIN2 is required to reset total call cost or to set a maximum limit to call costs.

- Default PIN2 is 9999.
- PIN2 can be changed (P. 4-2).

### PIN Lock & Cancellation (PUK)

If PIN1 or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, PIN Lock is activated, limiting handset use to specific functions. Enter Personal Unblocking Key (PUK1/ PUK2) to cancel PIN Lock.

- For information on PUK, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-46).

### Note

- If PUK1 is incorrectly entered ten times consecutively, USIM Card is locked and handset is disabled.
- If PUK2 is incorrectly entered ten times consecutively, operations requiring PIN2 entry are all disabled.
- Write down your PUK.
- To cancel USIM Card lock, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-46).

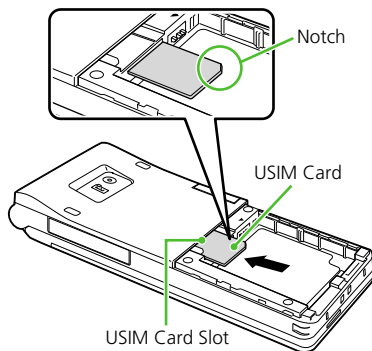


## USIM Card Installation

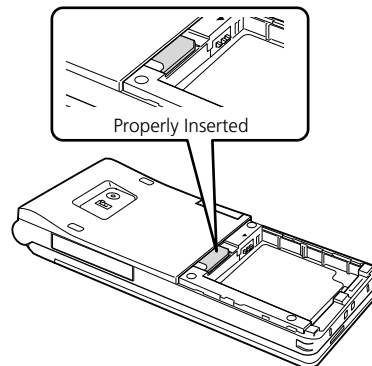
- Remove battery (P. 1-13) before inserting/removing USIM Card.

### Insertion

- 1 Slide USIM Card in (IC chip facing down)



- 2 Push USIM Card in completely




### Removal

- 1 Slide USIM Card out gently



## Notes on Battery Charging

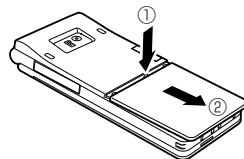
- Charge battery at least once every six months. If battery is left uncharged for a long period, it may become unusable or its operation time may decrease.
- Avoid connecting too many things to one AC outlet. Doing so may cause the AC outlet to overheat and cause a fire.
- Battery and AC Charger may become warm during charging, but this is not a malfunction. If they become too hot, however, stop charging and contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 14-46).
- If Charging Indicator flashes red during charging, battery may be faulty. Contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 14-46).
- Check the battery type on its label:

Mark	Type
Li-ion00	<div>Lithium-ion battery</div> <div>Lithium-ion batteries are a recyclable resource. Do not dispose of them as municipal waste. Bring used batteries to your nearest SoftBank Shop or recycling center after insulating the terminals with tape. Observe local regulations on battery disposal.</div> <div> Li-ion00</div>

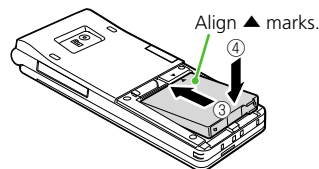
## Battery Installation

### Insertion

- 1 Press and slide battery cover off

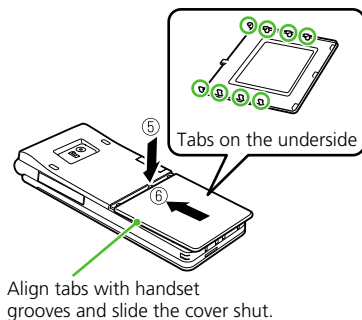


- 2 Insert battery into place





### 3 Replace cover

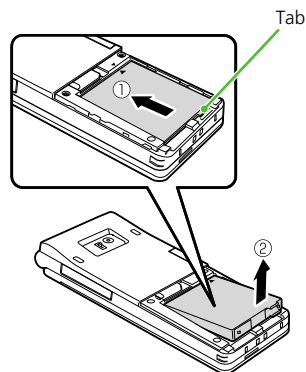


### Removal

● Turn off handset before removing battery.

#### 1 Remove battery cover

#### 2 Pressing Tab (1), lift out battery (2)



#### Note

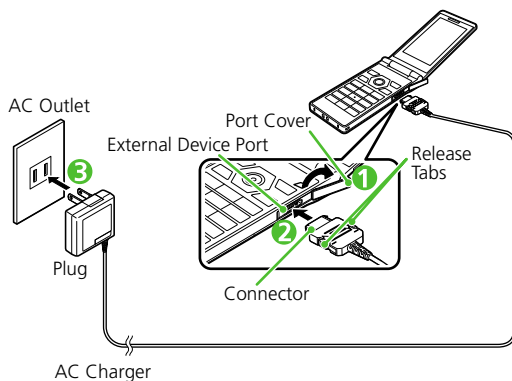
- Do not try to close the battery cover by force without aligning the tabs with handset grooves. Otherwise the tabs may break.



## Charging Battery

### Using AC Charger

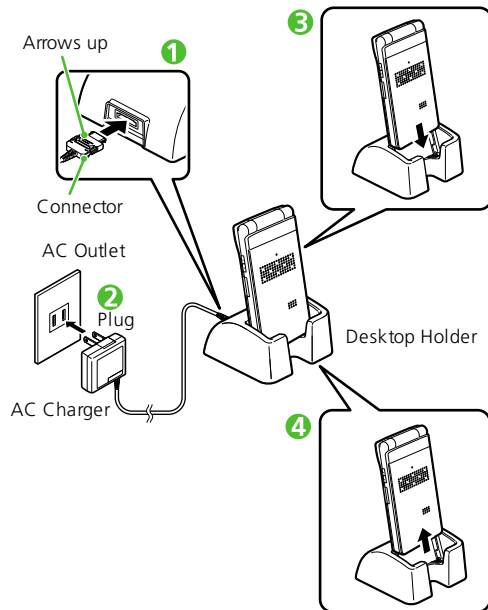
Use only SoftBank-specified AC Charger "ZTDAA1" (sold separately). In this guide, the ZTDAA1 model AC Charger is referred to as "AC Charger".



- 1 Open Port Cover**
- 2 Insert AC Charger connector into External Device Port**
- 3 Plug AC Charger into an AC Outlet**  
Charging Indicator lights red while charging. When charging finishes, Charging Indicator goes out.
- 4 Disconnect the connector from handset**  
Press and hold Release Tabs to remove the connector.
- 5 Unplug AC Charger from AC Outlet**
- 6 Close Port Cover**



## Using Optional Desktop Holder




**1** Insert AC Charger connector into Desktop Holder

**2** Plug AC Charger into an AC Outlet

**3** Place handset in Desktop Holder  
Charging Indicator lights red while charging. When charging finishes, Charging Indicator goes out.

**4** Tilt handset forward and lift out

### Note

- Battery can only be charged while inserted in handset.
- If Charging Indicator/Display Indicator  go out and **Charge unusual Stop charge** appears, disconnect handset from AC Charger and remove battery. Set up handset and Charger and start charging again. If the same error occurs, AC Charger may be faulty. Contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 14-46).

## More Features

### Customize

#### Backlight

- Set Backlight during Charging

▶ P. 13-7)



## Power On

- Make sure USIM Card is correctly inserted before turning power on.

### 1 Press and hold




#### Tip

- If handset is turned on immediately after powering it off or inserting battery, **WELCOME** may persist in Display for a while.
- After USIM Card is replaced, Handset Code is required when powering handset on for the first time. If Handset Code is incorrectly entered five times, handset shuts down automatically. Turn handset on again.

### ● Powering Handset On for the First Time (Initial Setup)

Setup prompt appears in Japanese.



Select **NO** and press  to exit.

After changing interface language to English (P. 13-6), restart handset and perform setup procedure as follows.

### 1 [Initial Settings] window YES

### 2 Auto Select a time zone

■ To Manually Enter Date & Time  
⇒ **Manual (Date time set)** 

⇒ Select a time zone  

Enter date and time 

### 3 Enter Handset Code Enter new Handset Code ⇒ YES

### 4 Select a font size

■ When **Separate setting** is Selected




Set a font size for each function window (P. 13-5).

### 5 [Keypad Sound Setting] window ⇒ ON or OFF

#### Tip










- Setup prompt no longer appears when all the initial setup items have been set.
- The default Handset Code is 9999.

### ● Retrieving Network Information

When ,  or  is pressed after initial setup, a prompt appears. Select **YES** to update network settings.

#### Tip

- Retrieve network information to use network-related services, such as mail and the Internet.

• To manually update network settings:  
 ⇒ Settings    
Connection Settings    
Retrieve NW Info   ⇒ YES   




### Power Off

#### 1 Press and hold

**SoftBank** appears and handset shuts down.

### More Features

#### Customize

##### Clock

- 12-hour or 24-hour Clock
- Set Auto Time Adjustment
- Manually Adjust Time
- Summer Time
- Time Zone (Sub Clock)
- Hide Sub Clock
- Summer Time (Sub Clock)

**(▶ P. 13-2)**

##### Auto Power On/Off

- Set Auto Power On/Off

**(▶ P. 13-3)**

##### Display Settings

- Set a Wake-up Image
- Set a Wake-up Message
- Set Font Sizes Collectively
- Set Font Size for Each Function Window

**(▶ P. 13-4)**

##### Sounds

- Mute Key Operation Tones

**(▶ P. 13-14)**



Use your handset responsibly. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn handset power off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from use in restaurants, lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

## Activating Manner Mode

Most handset sounds are muted in Manner Mode.

### 1 Press and hold


#### ■ To Cancel Manner Mode

➡ Press and hold 

### Note

- When your handset is set to vibrate for incoming calls in Manner Mode, be careful not to let it fall off a desk or slide too close to a stove, etc.

### Tip

- Shutter click sounds even in Manner Mode.
- Press and hold  to set or cancel Manner Mode during a call. Short beeps sound through the earpiece when Manner Mode is set or canceled during a call.

## More Features

### Customize

#### Manner Mode

- Set Manner Mode Type
- Configure Original Manner Mode

(▶ P. 13-13)



Handset Code, Center Access Code and Network Password are required to use handset.

- Avoid using your birthday, part of a phone number/address or combinations that are easily remembered (1111, 1234 etc.). Write down your security codes.
- Do not reveal your security codes to others. SoftBank is not liable for any damage due to handset misuse.

## Handset Code





Handset Code, 9999 by default, is required to use some handset functions. The code can be changed.

- If Handset Code is entered incorrectly or nothing is entered for 15 seconds, a tone sounds and a message appears. Enter correct Handset Code.

### Note

- The warning tone does not sound in Manner Mode or when *Keypad sound* is set to *OFF*.

## Changing Handset Code

- 1  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **Lock/Security** ⇒  ⇒ **Change security code** ⇒ 
- 2 **Enter current Handset Code** ⇒ 
- 3 **Enter new Handset Code** ⇒  ⇒ **YES** ⇒ 

## Center Access Code

Center Access Code, a four-digit code assigned at initial subscription, is required to access Optional Services via landlines or to subscribe to fee-based information.

## Network Password

Network Password, a four-digit code assigned at initial subscription, is required to use Call Barring.

- If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times, Call Barring settings are locked. Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed.



## Checking Battery Level

Use Battery Level meters as a guide only.

### Battery Level Indicator

Battery Level indicator appears at top of Display.

Sufficient

Low

Almost out. Charge immediately.

### Battery Level Beeper & Large Indicator

Check battery level by number of beeps and large indicator.

- Settings** **Other Settings** **Battery level**

A large battery level indicator appears. Beeps sound according to the battery level.

3 short beeps: Sufficient

2 short beeps: Low

1 short beep: Almost out. Charge immediately.

## Note

- The battery level beeper does not sound in Manner Mode or when *Keypad sound* is set to *OFF*.

### When Battery Is Empty

*Recharge battery* appears, the battery alarm sounds for about 10 seconds, and handset powers off in about 60 seconds. Charge battery.

## My Phone Number

Check handset phone number.

- 

Account Details window appears.

### Add Other Information

- Enter Handset Code
- Select an item
- Enter information

### View All Information

- Display all data*
- Enter Handset Code
- to switch tabs

### Reset Account Details

- Reset* Enter Handset Code *YES*

## Side Key Guard

Disable and while handset is closed.

- Press and hold**
- Repeat to cancel setting.

## Tip

- Alternatively, set Side Key Guard by:  
 *Settings* *Other Settings* *Side key guard* *ON* or *OFF*



# Basic Operations



<b>Menu Operations .....</b>	<b>2-2</b>	<b>Phone Book.....</b>	<b>2-18</b>
Accessing Handset Functions.....	2-2	Overview .....	2-18
Desktop Icons/Notifications.....	2-4	Creating Phone Book Entries .....	2-19
Navigating through Menus .....	2-6	Using Phone Book .....	2-20
<b>Multitask .....</b>	<b>2-8</b>	Phone Book Settings .....	2-22
Activating Another Function.....	2-8	<b>Advanced Features.....</b>	<b>2-25</b>
Toggling Functions .....	2-9	Main Menu.....	2-25
<b>Text Entry.....</b>	<b>2-10</b>	Desktop Icons.....	2-25
Overview.....	2-10	Text Entry .....	2-26
Entering Characters in 5-touch Mode....	2-12	Templates.....	2-27
Editing Text .....	2-14	Dictionaries .....	2-27
Editing Templates .....	2-14	Phone Book.....	2-28
Using Dictionaries .....	2-15		
Entering Characters in 2-touch Mode....	2-15		
Entering Characters in T9 Input			
Mode.....	2-16		

## 2





## Accessing Handset Functions

- In this guide, most operations start from Main Menu.

### From Main Menu

Press **MENU** to open Main Menu. Use **▲** to select an item and press **■** to open sub menus.



Main Menu

## Using Softkeys & Multi Selector

Press Softkeys or use Multi Selector in Standby to access assigned functions.

### ● Softkeys

- **[M]**: Open Mail menu.
- **[Y]** (Press and hold): Open Yahoo! Keitai menu.
- **[P]**: Access the function assigned to the key.

### ● Multi Selector

- **[S]**: Open S! Quick News List.
- **[P]**: Open Phone Book Search window.
- **[R]**: Open Received Calls window.
- **[C]**: Open Redial window.

## Keyword Search

Enter keywords to search for menu items.

1 **MENU** → **[P]**

2 Enter keyword → **■**

<Example> Enter "mail"



Corresponding results appear.

3 Select an item → **■**

- **Toggling Multiple Items**  
Press **[Y]** to toggle items.

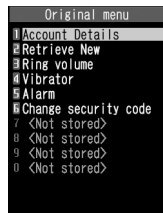




## From Original Menu

Assign often-used functions to Original Menu for quick access.

1 →



Press to toggle between Main Menu and Original Menu.

## Enter Menu Item Number

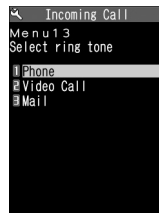
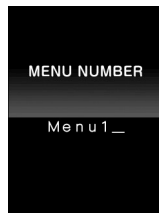
Enter menu item number (P. 14-18) for direct menu access. Note that Main Menu Theme must be set to **Basic**.

● See P. 2-25 for details on changing Main Menu Theme.

<Example> Access **Select ring tone** (menu no. 13)

1

2 →

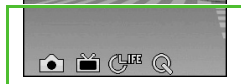






## Desktop Icons/ Notifications

Add functions to Desktop Icons and use them as shortcuts. Notifications appear on desktop to inform you of missed calls, new messages, etc. Select a notification to check the information.



### ● Functions Available for Shortcuts

Icon	Function
	Call Phone Number










Icon	Function
	Compose S! Mail
	Compose SMS
	Access Webpage (Yahoo! Keitai)
	Access Webpage (PC Site Browser)
	Play Melody
	Show Image
	Play Video
	S! Appli
	Inbox Folder
	Camera
	Video Camera
	Video Camera (Voice Mode)
	Schedule



Icon	Function
	To Do List
	Text Memo
	Bar Code Reader
	Text Reader
	Music Player
	TV
	Life History Viewer
	Calculator
	Dictionary
	Receive IR Transmission
	Original Menu
	Quick Search
	Viewer Type Menu (PC Site Browser)





## ● Notifications

Icon	Function/Information
	Missed Calls
	Answering Machine Play/delete messages.
	Answering Machine (Video Message) Play/delete Video Messages.
	Voice Mail
	New Messages
	Failed Alarms
	Missed TV Programs
	Timer Recording Finished
	Maximum Call Cost Limit Reached

Icon	Function/Information
	Software Update
	Content Keys Acquired

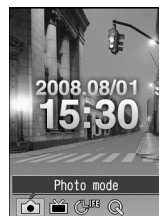
\* Notifications disappear after accessing the functions/information.

## Adding Shortcuts



- 1 Open a function →  → **Add desktop icon** →   
Add up to 15 icons.

## Accessing Shortcuts/ Notifications

- 1 



Shortcuts

- 2  to select an icon →   
Selected function/notification name appears.

### ■ Scrolling Desktop Icons



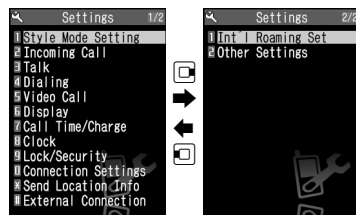




## Navigating through Menus

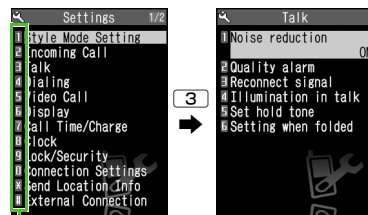
### Scrolling Pages

Use , , or to scroll next/previous pages.



## Selecting Menu Items Using Keypad

Use keypad to enter number corresponding to menu item.



Menu Numbers

## Undo & Return to Standby

Press to cancel operation and return to previous window.

Press to return to Standby.

- There are some exceptions in which pressing / does not bring you back to the previous window or Standby depending on the window or function.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Main Menu

- Change Main Menu Theme
- Switch to Simple Menu
- Temporarily Change Design Theme of Main Menu

P. 2-25

#### Desktop Icons

- Delete Notifications
- Edit Title of a Desktop Icon
- Change Icon Image
- Check Icon Information
- Change Order of Desktop Icons
- Delete Desktop Icons
- Reset Desktop Icons
- Show/Hide Desktop Icons

P. 2-25





### Customize

#### Menu Display Settings

- Switch Menu Display between List View and Details View
- Set Main Menu Theme
- Save Last Selected Menu Item to Memory
- Reset Menu Configuration to Default
- Create an Original Menu

(▶ P. 13-8)

#### Shortcut Key

- Change Function Assigned to Shortcut Key

(▶ P. 13-37)

#### Desktop Icons

- Set Desktop Theme
- Show New Message Indicator as 3D Animation

(▶ P. 13-7)

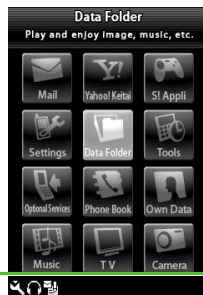




Activate multiple functions simultaneously to move from one function to another quickly. Select up to three functions, each from a different Function Group (except TV & Music).

Function Group	Function
Mail Group	Mail
Yahoo! Keitai Group	Yahoo! Keitai
S! Appli Group	S! Appli
Settings Group	Settings, Optional Services
Tools Group	Data Folder, Tools, Phone Book, Own Data, Camera
TV & Music Group	TV, Music

- See P. 14-2 for available combinations of functions that can be activated at the same time.
- Currently active functions are indicated by task indicators in Task Indicator Area. To switch to a different function, select the corresponding task indicator.



Task Indicator Area

- Transmission fees are incurred while accessing functions during a voice call. For details, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

## Activating Another Function

Activate another function without exiting current function.

**1** While using a function ⇒

**2** ⇒ Select another function ⇒

### ■ Mail Function

After step 1 ⇒ ⇒

### ■ To Access Yahoo! Keitai Portal

After step 1 ⇒ ⇒

### ■ To Activate Function Assigned to Shortcut Key

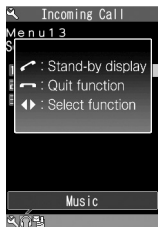
After step 1 ⇒ ⇒






## Toggling Functions

### 1 When multiple functions are active →




Task Switch Window

### Tip

- Alternatively, press and hold  to end Multitask and return to Standby.

### ■ Switching Functions

→  to select a task indicator →




### ■ Opening Main Menu

→ 

### ■ Returning to Standby

→ 

Press  in Standby to reopen Task Switch window.

### ■ Ending Multitask

→  → *Quit selected or Quit all function* → 





# Text Entry

2

Basic Operations

Handset has three text input methods: 5-touch, 2-touch and T9 input.

● This guide mainly explains Japanese text entry in 5-touch mode.

## Overview

### Text Entry Window

A text entry window consists of Character Entry Pane, Guide Pane and Status Pane. Indicator/key descriptions are as follows:



Character Entry Pane

Guide Pane

Status Pane

Text Entry Window

### ● Character Entry Pane

	Cursor
◀	End mark (end of text)

### ● Guide Pane

▲▼ CHG	☐ to convert characters
▲▼ All ▲▼ Find	☐ to search Phone Book
◀▶ ▲▼ Area	☐ to specify a text range to copy/cut
☒ LONG CR	Press and hold ☒ to insert line feed
☒ A/a	☒ to switch case of each character, or to add dakuten (゛)/handakuten (゜)
☒ AA → aa	☒ to cancel Caps Lock mode
☒ aa → Aa	☒ to set Shift mode
☒ Aa → AA	☒ to set Caps Lock mode
🏠 Back	☐ to cycle characters on a key in reverse order (e.g. え→う)
☒ Space	☐ to input a space when entering alphanumerics in 5-touch mode

### ● Status Pane

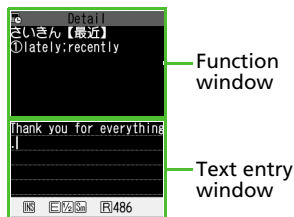
2 79	Text input method (2-touch/T9 input mode) (No indicator for 5-touch mode)
INS OVR	Insert/Overwrite mode
漢 力 E 123	Character entry mode
☒	Kuten code input mode (P. 2-27)
1/1 1/2	Double-byte/Single-byte mode
Sm	Lower case input mode
Shift CAPS LOCK	Shift/Caps Lock mode
R	Remaining number of available bytes (1 single-byte character: 1 byte, 1 double-byte character: 2 bytes)
In	Number of entered characters (appears when entering text to USIM Phone Book/SMS message.)






## Split Windows

In some instances, a second window appears with text entry window.










Referring to Dictionary from a text entry window







### ●Switching Windows

Press  and select *Change window* to switch windows.


## Changing Text Input Methods

- 1 During text entry    
**CHG input method**    
 Select a text input method  
   
 Alternatively, press and hold .

## Toggling Character Entry Modes

- 1 During text entry    
 Press  to toggle entry modes.  
 Kanji/hiragana  Katakana   
 Alphanumerics  Numbers

### Tip



- In 2-touch mode, press  to toggle single-byte and double-byte modes.

## About Interruptions to Text Entry

### ●When Battery Runs Out

The battery alarm sounds and *Recharge battery* appears. Entered text is automatically saved. Access the same function to continue text entry. Entered text may not be saved depending on the function.

### ●When is Pressed

A message appears asking whether to end text entry. Select *YES* and press  to end text entry without saving the text. To continue text entry, select *NO* and press .

### ●When a Voice Call Arrives

Answer the call. After call ends, text entry window reappears.





## Entering Characters in 5-touch Mode

Press a key multiple times to cycle through letters assigned to that key.

- For key assignment, see P. 14-9.

## Kanji, Hiragana & Katakana

Enter a reading (in hiragana) and convert to kanji, katakana, etc.

### ● Using Word Prediction

Enter a character and Word Prediction suggests words starting with that character. Word Prediction also suggests word selection for words to follow.

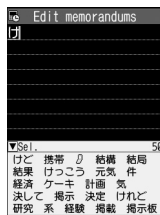
- Switch to kanji/hiragana mode to use word prediction.

<Example> Entering “携帯電話”

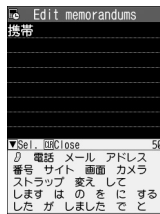
### 1 2 (4 times)

“け” is entered in Character Entry Pane.

Suggestion list shows predictions for words beginning with “け” in Guide Pane.



### 2 Select “携帯” →



“携帯” appears in Character Entry Pane.

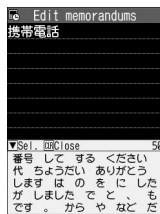
A suggestion list of words that follow “携帯” appears in Guide Pane.

### ■ When Required Word Does Not Appear

⇒ CLR

Continue hiragana (reading) entry in Character Entry Pane to narrow down selection.

### 3 Select “電話” →



### ■ To Exit Suggestion List

⇒

### Tip

- Handset has a learning feature that adds entered words to the suggestion list. Press and hold CLR to delete an added word from the suggestion list.



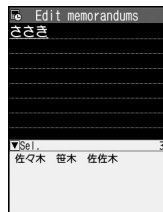


## ●Converting Hiragana

If the required suggestion does not appear or word prediction is set to Off, convert to Kanji as shown below:

<Example> Entering “佐々木”

- ① [3] (once) ⇒ [ ] ⇒ [3]  
(once) ⇒ [2] (twice)



- To Delete Last Input Character  
⇒ [CLR]

- To Determine Entered Hiragana without Converting It  
⇒ [ ]

- ② [ ] ⇒ [ ]

- To Reconvert to a Different Word  
⇒ [ ] ⇒ Select a word

- To Change Conversion Range  
⇒ [ ]

## Dakuten ( ` ) & Handakuten ( ˆ )

<Example> Entering “が”

- ① [2] (once) ⇒ [ ]

## Switching to Lower Case

<Example> Change “つ” to “つ”

- ① [4] (3 times) ⇒ [ ]

## Pictographs & Symbols

- ① [ ]



- ② Select a pictograph/symbol  
⇒ [ ]

- To Toggle Pictograph/Symbol Categories  
⇒ [ ]/[ ]

- To Toggle Full-Screen List and Continuous Entry  
⇒ [ ]

- ③ [CLR]

The pictograph/symbol list window is closed.

## Emoticons

- ① [ ] ⇒ **Face Mark** ⇒ [ ]

- ② Select an emoticon ⇒ [ ]

## Common Phrases (Templates)

- ① [ ] ⇒ **Common phrases** ⇒ [ ]

- ② Select a folder ⇒ [ ] ⇒  
Select a phrase ⇒ [ ] (twice)

## Alphanumerics, Numbers & Katakana

Enter alphanumerics, numbers or katakana in kanji/hiragana input mode.

- ① Enter hiragana ⇒ [ ] ⇒  
Select a character ⇒ [ ]





## Editing Text

### Deletion & Correction

- 1 Move cursor to the left of the character to delete →

CLR

- To Delete All Characters to the Right of Cursor

→ Press and hold CLR

- To Delete Entire Text

→ Move cursor to the end of text

→ Press and hold CLR

- 2 Position cursor → Enter correct characters

## Copy, Cut & Paste

- Only one entry can be stored on clipboard. If you copy or cut new text, the previously copied or cut text is overwritten.
- Copied or cut text can be pasted repeatedly until you copy or cut new text, or turn handset power off.

- 1 [F] → **Copy or Cut** → [■]

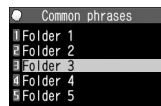
- 2 Move cursor to beginning of characters → [■]

- 3 Move cursor to end of characters → [■]

- 4 Position cursor → [F] → **Paste** → [■]

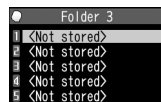
## Editing Templates

- 1 [MENU] → **Own Data** → [■] → **Common Phrases** → [■]



Templates (Common phrases) window

- 2 Select a folder → [■]



Templates List

- 3 Select an entry → [■] → Enter text → [■]



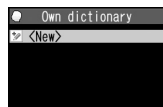


## Using Dictionaries

### Saving Words to Own Dictionary

Save frequently used words to Own Dictionary. For each word, save a reading (in hiragana). When the reading is entered in a text entry window, the word appears among the suggestions.

- 1 ⇒ **Own Data** ⇒ ⇒ **Own Dictionary** ⇒



Own Dictionary Window

- 2 **<New>** ⇒ ⇒ Enter word  
⇒ ⇒ Enter reading ⇒

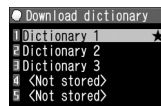
#### ■ To Check Saved Words

⇒ Select a word ⇒

### Using Downloaded Dictionaries

Download dictionaries from Yahoo! Keitai sites. Dictionary must be enabled in advance.

- 1 ⇒ **Own Data** ⇒ ⇒ **DL Dictionary** ⇒



Downloaded Dictionary Window

- 2 Select a dictionary ⇒

★ appears next to the enabled dictionary.

#### ■ To Disable a Dictionary

⇒ Select a dictionary with ★ ⇒

#### Tip

- If an emoticon dictionary is enabled, its content is reflected in the emoticon list when entering emoticons.

## Entering Characters in 2-touch Mode

Each hiragana character is entered by combining two key presses.

- For combinations of character input keys, see P. 14-10.
- Procedures for selecting predicted words and for converting entered hiragana are the same as those used in 5-touch mode (P. 2-12).

<Example> Entering “キャンプ”

- 1 (き) ⇒   
(change to lower case mode)  
⇒ (ゃ) ⇒   
(change to upper case mode)  
⇒ (ん) ⇒   
(ふ) ⇒ (°)

- 2 ⇒

#### Tip

- Pressing also adds dakuten (°) / handakuten (°) or toggles upper case and lower case.
- Press to toggle double-byte and single-byte modes.





## Entering Characters in T9 Input Mode

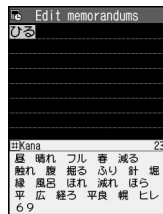
Press a key once for each character, and select the word from the suggestion list.

- For key assignment, see P. 14-11.
- When character entry mode is "Number," 5-touch input method is automatically applied.

<Example> Entering "春"

1 [6] ⇒ [9]

Word predictions for the key combination appear.



■ To Change Conversion Range



■ Toggle Kanji and Hiragana Suggestion Lists



■ Toggle English and Japanese Suggestion Lists



2 [Kanji/Hiragana icon] ⇒ [English/Japanese icon]

Select word from among the suggestions in Guide Pane.

■ To Show Converted Words on Suggestion List



For example, if you specify "はる", then "張る", "貼る" and other words that have the same reading appear on the suggestion list.

■ To Show Predicted Words on Suggestion List



For example, if you specify "はる", then "春休み", "遥か" and other words that begin with the same reading appear on the suggestion list.

■ To Exit Suggestion List and Continue Character Entry



3 [Exit icon]

## Editing Readings

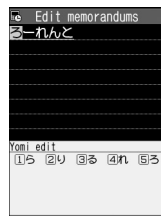
When the desired word does not appear on the suggestion list because its reading is not correctly predicted, edit the reading as shown below.

<Example> Entering "らんらんと"

1 [9] (row ら) ⇒ [0] (row わ)  
⇒ [9] (row ら) ⇒ [0] (row わ) ⇒ [4] (row た)

At this point, the correct word "らんらんと" is not shown on the suggestion list.

2 [Edit icon]



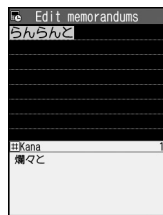
Cursor is on the first character of the reading. The edit reading window opens in Guide Pane, where hiragana characters of row ら are shown.






## Text Entry

3 [1] (5) → [3] (ん) → [1]  
 (5) → [3] (ん) → [5] (と)



### ■ If No Correction is Necessary

⇒  to move cursor to the next character

### ■ To End Editing Reading

⇒ 

The words predicted/converted from the edited reading appear on the suggestion list.

4 

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Text Entry

- Switch between Lower Case & Upper Case
- Switch between Single-byte & Double-byte
- Cycle Characters in Reverse Order
- Undo Last Operation
- Move Cursor to Top/End of Text
- Overwrite & Insert Modes
- Insert Line Feed
- Input a Space
- Use Dictionary
- Quote Text
- Use Kuten Codes

(▶ P. 2-26)

#### Templates

- Edit a Folder Name
- Reset a Folder Name
- Edit Templates
- Reset Templates

(▶ P. 2-27)

#### Dictionaries

- Edit Entries
- Delete Entries

- Edit Title
- View Information
- Delete Dictionaries

(▶ P. 2-27)

### Customize

#### Text Entry

- Set Text Input Method
- Set Word Prediction
- Set to Show T9 Suggestion Words in Kanji or Hiragana
- Clear Learning History
- Change Font Size

(▶ P. 13-37)





## Overview

Save phone numbers, e-mail addresses and other contact information to Phone Book.

### Phone Book Data & Settings

#### Contact & Personal Information

- |                      |              |
|----------------------|--------------|
| N • R Name & Reading | Birthday     |
| GR Group             | Memo         |
| Phone Numbers        | Still Image  |
| E-mail Addresses     | Entry Number |
| Address              |              |

#### Custom Settings

- |                   |                  |
|-------------------|------------------|
| Incoming Ringtone | Vibration        |
| Incoming Image    | Outgoing Message |
| Illumination      | My Signal        |

#### Others

Secret Data



### Phone Book Usage Examples

#### Speed Dial

Abbreviated dialing for numbers in Phone Book (P. 3-12).

#### Tomo-Den

Save frequently accessed Phone Book entries to Tomo-Den (P. 3-12).

#### Reject Calls

Reject calls from phone numbers not saved in Phone Book (P. 4-5).

When you make calls or write messages, specify phone numbers or addresses from Phone Book.

### ● Back Up Important Information

Keep a separate copy of Phone Book entry information. When battery is exhausted or removed for extended periods, Phone Book data may be lost or altered. Damage to handset may also affect data recovery. SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost/altered Phone Book data.





## Creating Phone Book Entries

<Example>

Enter a name, phone number and e-mail address, and specify a group

- 1 ⇒ **Phone Book** ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ **Add to phonebook** ⇒ ⇒ **Phone** ⇒

- 2 Enter name ⇒ ⇒ Check reading ⇒

Reading is entered automatically.  
Edit as necessary.



Phone Book Entry Window

- 3 ⇒ ⇒ Select a group ⇒

- 4 ⇒ ⇒ Enter phone number ⇒ ⇒ Select an icon ⇒

■ To Save Additional Numbers

Select <Not stored> and repeat the same step.

- 5 ⇒ ⇒ Enter e-mail address ⇒ ⇒ Select an icon ⇒

■ To Save Additional Addresses

Select <Not stored> and repeat the same step.

- 6

## Setting Incoming Image

- 1 [Phone Book Entry] window  
⇒ ⇒

- 2 **Select image** ⇒ ⇒  
Select a folder ⇒ ⇒  
Select a still image ⇒

■ To Capture an Image with Camera

⇒ **Photo mode** ⇒ ⇒ Capture image ⇒

■ To Cancel Selected Image

⇒ **Release this** ⇒

## Creating Entries from Other Functions

Create entries from Received Calls, Dialed Calls, Redial, Received/Sent Address List, Text Reader, Yahoo! Keitai, Phone Number Entry window, etc.

<Example> Create an entry from Received Calls

- 1 ⇒ Select a record ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ **Add to phonebook** ⇒ ⇒ **Phone** ⇒

- 2 **Add** ⇒ ⇒ Search Phone Book ⇒ Select an entry ⇒ (twice)

Phone Book Entry window with the phone number automatically entered opens.

■ To Save As a New Entry

⇒ **New** ⇒

- 3 Enter other items ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒





2

## Resuming Phone Book Edit Operation

If battery alarm sounds or if another function was activated while editing an entry, resume operation as follows:

- 1 ⇒ **Phone Book** ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ **Add to phonebook** ⇒ ⇒ **Phone** ⇒ ⇒ **Recall** ⇒

- To Save As a New Entry  
⇒ **New** ⇒

- 2 Enter each item ⇒

### Tip

- Save entry before you exit Phone Book. Otherwise, all changes will be lost.

## Using Phone Book

### Dialing from Phone Book

- 1 ⇒ **Phone Book** ⇒



Phone Book Entry List Window

- 2 / to switch tabs ⇒ to select an entry

- To Dial the First Phone Number  
⇒

- 3 ⇒ to select a phone number



Phone Book Entry Details Window

- Video Call  
⇒

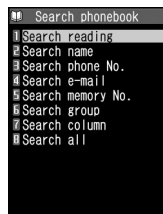
- 4





## Specifying a Search Method

1



Phone Book Search Window

2 Select a search method →

### Search reading:

Enter a reading and press .

### Search name:

Enter a name and press .

### Search phone No.:

Enter a phone number and press .

### Search e-mail:

Enter an e-mail address and press .

### Search memory No.:

Enter three-digit entry number.

### Search group:

Select a group to view saved entries.

### Search column:

Press a key ( - or ) to access the tab corresponding to that key.

### Search all:

Phone Book is organized by tabs (Japanese syllabary order).



Phone Book Entry List Window

### Tip

- Phone Book entries saved on USIM Card are indicated by .
- Press during a call to open Search Group window and to open Search Column window.

## Accessing Entries from Other Functions

Access Phone Book entries from Received Calls, Dialed Calls, Redial and Received/Sent Address List.

<Example> Access a Phone Book entry from Received Calls

1 → → **Look-up**  
**phonebook** →





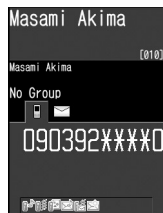
## Phone Book Settings

### Customizing Handset Response

Set different ringtones, images, etc. per entry item or Group.

#### ● Indicators

The following indicators appear for set items.



- Ringtone (Incoming Calls)
- Ringtone (Mail)
- Illumination (Incoming Calls)
- Illumination (Mail)
- Vibration (Incoming Calls)
- Vibration (Mail)
- Incoming Image (Calls)
- Outgoing Message (Incoming Calls)
- My Signal (Incoming Calls)
- My Signal (Mail)

#### ● To Customize by Phone Number/E-mail Address

<Example> Set a ringtone for incoming voice calls

1 [Phone Book Entry Details] window → to select a phone number → → **Ring tone/Image** →

2 **Voice call (recv.)** →

3 **Ring tone** → → Select a ringtone type → (→  
Select a folder → →  
Select a ringtone → )

#### ■ To Cancel Custom Settings

→ Select an item →

#### ● To Customize by Group

<Example> Set illumination for incoming messages

1 [Phone Book Entry List] window → → **Group setting** →

2 Select a group → → **Ring tone/Image** →

3 **Mail (recv.)** →

4 **Illumination** → →  
Select a pattern →

#### ■ To Cancel Custom Settings

→ Select an item →

#### Note

- *Illumination* and *My Signal* cannot be set at the same time.
- Custom settings are unavailable for secret Phone Book entries.





## Restricting Calls to/from Specific Phone Numbers

Restrict calls to/from specific numbers in Phone Book. This can help manage personal calls and prevent nuisance calls.

1 [Phone Book Entry Details] window to select a phone number **Restrictions**

2 Enter Handset Code

3 Select a restriction type

### Restrict dialing:

Restrict outgoing calls to all numbers except a specified number. To call that number, you need to dial from Phone Book.

### Call rejection:

Restrict incoming calls from a specified number.

### Call acceptance:

Receive incoming calls only from a specified number.

### ■ To Cancel Restriction

Select a restriction type with

★

### ● When *Restrict dialing* is Set

The following operations are disabled:

Dialing by direct number entry on Keypad, dialing from Received Calls, and manipulating Phone Book data other than calling the specified number in Phone Book.

### Tip

- When *Restrict dialing* is set, all records on Redial, Dialed Calls and Sent Address List are deleted.
- You can call emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118 even when *Restrict dialing* is set.
- If you change or delete the specified number, the set restriction is canceled.

## Setting Entries as Secret

Prevent others from accessing certain Phone Book entries by setting them as secret data.

- Phone Book entries set as secret are only shown in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode (P. 4-6).

1 [Phone Book Entry Details] window **Set secret**

### ■ To Cancel Secret Setting

**Release secret**

This procedure is available in Secret Mode or in Secret Data Only Mode.

### Tip

- Phone Book entries saved in Secret Mode or in Secret Data Only Mode are automatically set as secret.
- If a Phone Book entry that has been saved to Tomo-Den is set as secret, the entry is canceled from Tomo-Den.





## Managing USIM Phone Book

Phone Book entries can be copied between handset and USIM Card.

**1** ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **USIM Operation** ⇒ ⇒ **Enter Handset Code** ⇒

**2** **Copy** ⇒ ⇒ **Phone** → **USIM** or **USIM** → **Phone** ⇒ ⇒ **Phonebook** ⇒

**3** **Search Phone Book**

**4** **Select an entry** ⇒

Repeat this step to specify other entries.

**5** ⇒ **YES** ⇒

### Note

- Items that cannot be saved to USIM Phone Book are not copied.
- Phone Book entries set as secret cannot be copied.
- While Phone Book entries are being copied, you cannot make/receive calls or send/receive messages.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Creating Entries

- Save a Postal Code, Address, Birthday & Memo
- Change Entry Number

(▶ P. 2-28)

#### Phone Book Search

- Change Index Tab of Phone Book Entry List Window
- Change Font Size
- Change Phone Number/E-mail Address Order
- Compose an S! Mail from Phone Book
- Compose an SMS Message from Phone Book

(▶ P. 2-28)

## Managing Phone Book

- Check Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item
- Cancel Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item
- Check Restriction Settings by Restriction Type
- Cancel Restriction Settings by Restriction Type
- Check Number of Phone Book Entries
- Edit a Phone Book Entry
- Copy a Phone Book Entry
- Delete Entries
- Delete Items from an Entry
- Delete an Entry from USIM Card

(▶ P. 2-29)

### Customize

#### Phone Book

- Set Preferred Search Method
- Change Group Name

(▶ P. 13-16)





## Main Menu

### Start Here

[Main Menu] ..... P. 2-2

#### Change Main Menu Theme

[Main Menu] → [Menu Icon] → Select a pattern → [Pattern Icon]

#### Switch to Simple Menu

[Main Menu] → [Menu Icon] → **Simple Menu** → [Simple Menu Icon] → **YES** or **NO** → [Simple Menu Icon]

👉 Simple Menu, which is shown in large font and is made up of only typically used menu items, facilitates menu operations.

#### Temporarily Change Design Theme of Main Menu

[Main Menu] → [Menu Icon] → Select a theme → [Theme Icon]

👉 Next time you open Main Menu, default Main Menu returns.

## Desktop Icons

### Start Here

#### Delete Notifications

[Icon] → Press and hold [CLR]

👉 Some notifications may not disappear depending on the type.

#### Edit Title of a Desktop Icon

[Icon] → Select an icon → [Edit Icon] → **Edit title** → [Icon] → Enter title → [Icon]

#### Change Icon Image

[Icon] → Select an icon → [Edit Icon] → **CHG icon image** → [Icon] → **Select icon image** → [Icon] → Select a folder → [Icon] → Select a file → [Icon]

👉 To reset icon image, select **Default icon image** and press [Icon].

#### Check Icon Information

[Icon] → Select an icon → [Edit Icon] → **Icon info setting** → [Icon]

#### Change Order of Desktop Icons

[Icon] → Select an icon → [Edit Icon] → **Sort** → [Icon] → **YES** → [Icon] → [Move Icon] to select a position → [Icon]

#### Delete Desktop Icons

[Icon] → Select an icon → [Edit Icon] → **Delete** → [Icon] → **Delete this, Delete selected** or **Delete all** → [Icon] (→ Select icons → [Icon] → [Menu Icon]) → **YES** → [Icon]

#### Reset Desktop Icons

[Icon] → [Edit Icon] → **Reset desktop** → [Icon] → **YES** → [Icon]

#### Show/Hide Desktop Icons

[Icon] → [Menu Icon] → **Display setting** → [Icon] → **Display always** or **Display at use** → [Icon] (→ [Icon])

👉 When **Display at use** is set, desktop icons only appear when you press [Icon] in Standby.





## Text Entry

### Start Here

[Text Entry] window ..... P. 2-10

### Switch between Lower Case & Upper Case

[Text Entry] window → [P] →  
*Lower case* or *Upper case* → [■]

### Switch between Single-byte & Double-byte

[Text Entry] window → [P] →  
*Single-byte* or *Double-byte* → [■]

### Cycle Characters in Reverse Order

[Text Entry] window → Input a character → [↶]

☞ This procedure is available in 5-touch mode.

### Undo Last Operation

[Text Entry] window → Press and hold [↶]

### Move Cursor to Top/End of Text

[Text Entry] window → [P] →  
*Jump* → [■] → *To beginning* or *To end* → [■]

### Overwrite & Insert Modes

[Text Entry] window → [P] →  
*Overwrite* or *Insert* → [■]

☞ Text entry windows always open in *Insert* mode.

### Insert Line Feed

[Text Entry] window → Press and hold [✖]

☞ Press [ ] to add a space at the end of text.

### Input a Space

[Text Entry] window → [P] →  
*Space* → [■]

☞ Press [ ] to add a space at the end of text.

### Use Dictionary

[Text Entry] window → [P] → *Refer dic.* → [■] → *Enter word* → [■] →  
Enter word → [■] → Select a dictionary → [■] → Select a word → [■] → Read descriptions of the word

- To Enter a Word from Search History  
→ *Reference history* → [■] →  
Select a word → [■] → Select a dictionary → [■] → Select a word → [■] → Read descriptions of the word





## Quote Text

[Text Entry] window → [P] →

**Quote data** → [■]

- To Quote from a Phone Book Entry  
→ **Quote phonebook** → [■] →  
Search Phone Book → Select a data  
item to quote text from → [■] → [☑]
- To Quote from Account Details  
→ **Account Details** → [■] → Enter  
Handset Code → [■] → Select a data  
item → [■] → [☑]
- To Scan Text by Text Reader  
→ **Text reader** → [■] → Scan text  
with camera → [☑]
- To Scan Bar Code by Bar Code Reader  
→ **Bar code reader** → [■] → Scan a  
bar code with camera → [■]

## Use Kuten Codes

[Text Entry] window → [P] →

**Kuten code** → [■] → Enter kuten  
codes (P. 14-12)

## Templates

### Start Here

[Templates (Common phrases)]  
window ..... P. 2-14

[Templates List] ..... P. 2-14

### Edit a Folder Name

[Templates (Common phrases)]  
window → Select a folder → [P] →  
**Edit folder name** → [■] → Enter  
folder name → [■]

### Reset a Folder Name

[Templates (Common phrases)]  
window → Select a folder → [P] →  
**Reset name** → [■] → YES → [■]

### Edit Templates

[Templates List] → Select a  
template → [P] → **Edit** → [■] →  
Edit phrase → [■]

## Reset Templates

[Templates List] → Select a  
template → [P] → **Delete this** or  
**Delete all** → [■] (→ Enter Handset  
Code → [■]) → YES → [■]

☑ User entries are deleted, and  
preinstalled templates return to  
default.

## Dictionaries

### Start Here

[Own Dictionary] window ..... P. 2-15  
[Downloaded Dictionary] window  
..... P. 2-15

### Own Dictionary

### Edit Entries

[Own Dictionary] window →  
Select an entry → [☑] → Edit word  
→ [■] → Edit reading → [■]





#### Delete Entries

[Own Dictionary] window →  
 Select an entry → → **Delete** →  
 → **Delete this, Delete selected**  
 or **Delete all** → (→ Select  
 entries → → or enter  
 Handset Code → → **YES** →

#### Downloaded Dictionaries

##### Edit Title

[Downloaded Dictionary] window  
 → Select a dictionary → → **Edit**  
**title** → → Edit title →

##### View Information

[Downloaded Dictionary] window  
 → Select a dictionary → →  
**Dictionary info** →

#### Delete Dictionaries

[Downloaded Dictionary] window  
 → Select a dictionary → →  
**Delete this** or **Delete all** → (→  
 Enter Handset Code → → **YES**  
 →

## Phone Book

### Start Here

[Phone Book Entry] window.... P. 2-19  
 [Phone Book Entry List] window  
 ..... P. 2-20  
 [Phone Book Entry Details] window  
 ..... P. 2-20  
 [Phone Book Search] window  
 ..... P. 2-21

#### Creating Entries

##### Save a Postal Code, Address, Birthday & Memo

[Phone Book Entry] window → ,  
 or → → Enter content →

#### Change Entry Number

[Phone Book Entry] window →   
 → → Change entry number →

#### Phone Book Search

##### Change Index Tab of Phone Book Entry List Window

[Phone Book Entry List] window  
 → → **Change Display** → →  
**Alphabet, Memory No. or Group**  
 →

##### Change Font Size

[Phone Book Entry List] window/  
 [Phone Book Entry Details] window  
 → → **Big font** or **Standard font**  
 →





### Change Phone Number/E-mail Address Order

[Phone Book Entry Details] window  
 ⇒ Select a phone number/e-mail address ⇒ ⇒ **Move to top** ⇒

This procedure is available when more than one phone number/e-mail address is saved to a Phone Book entry.

### Compose an S! Mail from Phone Book

[Phone Book Entry Details] window  
 ⇒ to select an e-mail address ⇒ ⇒ Compose S! Mail

### Compose an SMS Message from Phone Book

[Phone Book Entry Details] window  
 ⇒ to select a phone number ⇒ ⇒ **Compose SMS** ⇒ ⇒ Compose SMS message

## Managing Phone Book

### Check Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item

[Phone Book Entry List] window ⇒ ⇒ **Ring tone/Image** ⇒ ⇒  
 Select an item with ★ ⇒ ⇒  
 Select an item with ★ ⇒ ⇒  
**Check settings** ⇒ ⇒ Select an item with ★ ⇒

### Cancel Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item

[Phone Book Entry List] window  
 ⇒ ⇒ **Ring tone/Image** ⇒ ⇒  
 Select an item with ★ ⇒ ⇒  
 Select an item with ★ ⇒ ⇒  
**Release settings** ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒

### Check Restriction Settings by Restriction Type

[Phone Book Entry List] window  
 ⇒ ⇒ **Restrictions** ⇒ ⇒  
 Enter Handset Code ⇒ ⇒  
 Select a restriction type with ★ ⇒ ⇒ **Check settings** ⇒

### Cancel Restriction Settings by Restriction Type

[Phone Book Entry List] window  
 ⇒ ⇒ **Restrictions** ⇒ ⇒  
 Enter Handset Code ⇒ ⇒  
 Select a restriction type with ★ ⇒ ⇒ **Release settings** ⇒ ⇒  
 YES ⇒

### Check Number of Phone Book Entries

[Phone Book Entry List] window  
 ⇒ ⇒ **No. of phonebook** ⇒





#### Edit a Phone Book Entry

[Phone Book Entry Details] window  
 ⇒ ⇒ **Edit phonebook** ⇒ ⇒  
 Edit each item ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒   
 • To Save as a New Entry  
 ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ Enter entry number  
 The edited entry is saved as a new entry and the original entry remains the same as before.

#### Copy a Phone Book Entry

[Phone Book Entry Details] window  
 ⇒ ⇒ **Copy to USIM** or **Copy from USIM** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

#### Delete Entries

[Phone Book Entry List] window  
 ⇒ Select an entry ⇒ ⇒ **Delete data** ⇒ ⇒ **Delete this, Delete selected or Delete all** ⇒ (⇒  
 Select entries ⇒ ⇒ or enter  
 Handset Code ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒   
 (⇒ **YES** ⇒ )

#### Delete Items from an Entry

[Phone Book Entry Details] window  
 ⇒ to select an item ⇒ ⇒  
**Delete data** ⇒ ⇒ **Delete phone No., Delete mail add., Delete address, Delete birthday, Delete memorandums, Delete image or Delete this** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

#### Delete an Entry from USIM Card

⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **USIM Operation** ⇒ ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒ ⇒ **Delete** ⇒ ⇒ **USIM** ⇒ ⇒ **Phonebook** ⇒   
 ⇒ Search Phone Book ⇒ Select an entry ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒



# Calling



<b>Overview</b> .....	<b>3-2</b>	<b>Calling While Abroad</b>	
<b>Voice Call</b> .....	<b>3-3</b>	<b>(Global Roaming)</b> .....	<b>3-13</b>
Making Voice Calls.....	3-3	Calling Japan and Other Countries .....	3-13
International Calls.....	3-3	Calling within the Same Country.....	3-13
Answering Voice Calls.....	3-3	<b>Optional Services</b> .....	<b>3-14</b>
Answering Machine .....	3-4	Overview .....	3-14
<b>Video Call</b> .....	<b>3-7</b>	<b>Advanced Features</b> .....	<b>3-16</b>
Video Call Window .....	3-7	Outgoing Call Functions.....	3-16
Making Video Calls .....	3-7	International Calls .....	3-16
Answering Video Calls .....	3-8	Handling Incoming Calls .....	3-16
<b>Call Logs</b> .....	<b>3-10</b>	Engaged Call Operations .....	3-17
Dialing from Call Logs .....	3-10	Call Logs .....	3-18
Call Time & Cost .....	3-11	Speed Dial .....	3-19
<b>Speed Dial</b> .....	<b>3-12</b>	Optional Services .....	3-19
Abbreviated Dialing.....	3-12		
Dialing from Tomo-Den.....	3-12		

## 3





# Overview

Voice call and video call are available on handset.

## 3 Calling

### Voice Call

Make Calls to:



SoftBank  
Handsets



Non-SoftBank  
Mobile Phones



Landlines

### Video Call

Make Calls to:



SoftBank  
Handsets



Non-SoftBank  
Mobile Phones

Other party must use a video call  
compatible mobile phone



International  
Call

### Calling Abroad from Japan

Make/receive voice and video calls.  
(Prior application may be required.)

Global  
Roaming

### Using Handset Abroad

Handset is Global Roaming Service eligible.  
(Prior application may be required.)

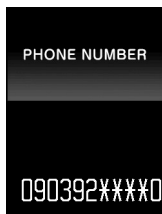
- Take "Global Roaming Guide" with you when traveling abroad.





## Making Voice Calls

### 1 Enter phone number



Phone Number Entry Window

#### ■ Correcting Misentries

⇒ to scroll cursor ⇒ Reenter number(s)

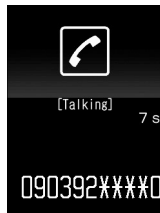
#### ■ Deleting Numbers

⇒ to select a number ⇒ Press and hold to delete all numbers to the left of the selected number.

#### ■ Deleting Phone Number

⇒ to select the first or last number ⇒ Press and hold

### 2



Voice Call Window

### 3 to end call

#### Tip

- Always include the area code even when dialing from the same area.
- When you hear a busy tone, the other party is on another line.
- When you hear a message saying that the other party cannot be reached, the other party's mobile phone is off or is out of signal range.
- When you hear a message asking for your caller ID, call again with your number revealed.
- After Display backlight turns off during a call, if no keys are pressed for about two minutes, Display goes off and handset enters power saving mode regardless of Lighting setting for Backlight (P. 13-7). Handset can be operated in power saving mode in the same way as when Display is lit.

## Available Keys during Voice Calls

Adjust Earpiece Volume	or press and hold
Hold Call	

## International Calls

- International Call Service may require prior application.

### 1 Enter phone number ⇒

⇒ **Int'l call** ⇒

### 2 Select a country code ⇒

⇒ **Select an international prefix number** ⇒ ⇒

### 3 to end call

## Answering Voice Calls







### 1 When a call arrives ⇒

### 2 to end call



Record callers' messages on handset when you are unable to answer voice/video calls.

## Setting Answering Machine

- 1  → **Settings** →  → **Incoming Call** →  → **Answering Machine** → 
- 2 **ON** →  → Select an outgoing message → 
- 3 Enter ring time

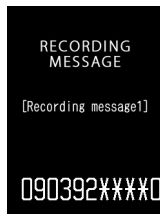
### Tip


- When Voice Mail or Call Forward is activated, set a shorter ring time for Answering Machine than that for Voice Mail or Call Forward.

## ● When a Call Arrives

Answering Machine activates after the set ring time. Outgoing message plays, and the caller's voice/video message is recorded.

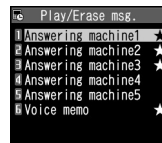
Handset returns to Standby when recording is complete. Answering Machine notification and Display indicator appear. The indicator shows the number of messages.



- To Answer Call during Recording  
➡ 





## Playing Messages

- 1   Select notification   
or   







### Play/Delete Voice Message Window

Items with a message recorded are indicated by ★.

- 2 Select a message → 
- To Delete a Message While Playing it
-  → Erase →  → YES → 

## Available Keys during Playback

Play Next Message	
Stop	 /CLR
Return a Voice Call	
Return a Video Call	



**Tip**

- Pressing in Standby also plays recorded voice messages.
- To play voice messages from Main Menu:

⇒ *Tools* ⇒ ⇒ *Play/Erase Msg.* ⇒

## Available Keys during Video Message Playback

Play Previous/Next Message	
Adjust Volume	or
Pause/Play	
Stop	
Return a Voice Call	
Return a Video Call	

**Tip**

- To play video messages from Main Menu:
- ⇒ *Tools* ⇒ ⇒ *Play/Erase VC Msg.* ⇒

## Activate When Call Arrives

Activate Answering Machine when unable to answer an incoming call. Answering Machine setting returns, after message is recorded.

### 1 When a call arrives ⇒

Answering Machine is activated and starts recording.

#### ■ To Activate Manner Mode at the Same Time

⇒ When a call arrives ⇒

**Note**

- Answering Machine cannot be activated when memory is full.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Outgoing Call Functions

- Show/Hide Caller ID
- Adjust Earpiece (Speaker) Volume in Advance
- Add Prefix Numbers

▶ P. 3-16

#### International Calls

- Enter “+” to Call Abroad

▶ P. 3-16

#### Handling Incoming Calls

- Reject Calls
- Place Calls on Hold
- Forward Calls
- Forward Calls to Voice Mail Center

▶ P. 3-16

#### Engaged Call Operations

- Handsfree
- Send Touch Tones

▶ P. 3-17

#### Answering Machine

- Delete Recorded Messages

▶ P. 3-18





### Customize

#### Outgoing Calls

- Save Prefix Numbers
- Save Touch Tones
- Set Numbers after “✱” as Sub Address

(▶ P. 13-16)

#### Display Settings

- Set an Outgoing Call Image

(▶ P. 13-4)

#### International Calls

- Change International Access Code Automatically Dialed with “+”
- Change a Country Code
- Save an International Access Code

(▶ P. 13-17)

#### Incoming Call Alerts

- Adjust Ringtone Volume
- Set a Ringtone
- Set Vibration
- Set Illumination Color
- Set an Incoming Call Image
- Show Phone Book Entry Images for Incoming Calls

(▶ P. 13-11)

#### Answering Incoming Calls

- Set to Answer Calls by Pressing Any Key
- Set to Mute Ringtone by Pressing Any Key

(▶ P. 13-12)

#### Call Settings

- Set Reconnection Tone
- Set Noise Reduction
- Set Weak Signal Alarm
- Set Illumination Color for Incoming Calls during Calls
- Set to Mute by Closing Handset
- Set to End Call by Closing Handset
- Set a Hold Message

(▶ P. 13-17)





## Video Call Window

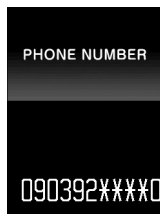


## Video Call Indicators

	Transmitting Audio/ Transmission Failed
	Transmitting Video/ Transmission Failed
	Sending Camera Image/ Substitute Image
	Handsfree On/Off
	Muting
	Photo Mode (Portrait/Scenery/ Close-up)

## Making Video Calls

### 1 Enter phone number



Phone Number Entry Window

#### ■ Correcting Misentries

⇒ to scroll cursor ⇒ Reenter number(s)

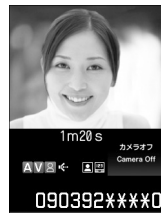
#### ■ Deleting Numbers

⇒ to select a number ⇒ Press and hold to delete all numbers to the left of the selected number.

#### ■ Deleting Phone Number

⇒ to select the first or last number ⇒ Press and hold

### 2



Video Call Window

### 3 to end call

#### Tip

- Always include the area code even when dialing from the same area.
- Video calls made to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) are automatically switched to voice calls.
- An error message with a possible cause appears when a video call fails to be connected.





## Available Keys during Video Calls

Adjust Earpiece (Speaker) Volume	or
Hold Call	
Toggle Substitute Image/Camera Image	
Toggle Main Window Images	Press and hold  to toggle image as follows: The other party's image → Your image → The other party's image (sub window off) → Your image (sub window off)
Zoom In/Out Outgoing Camera Image	
Mute Audio	Press and hold . To cancel mute, press and hold  again.

## Answering Video Calls

## 1 When a video call arrives ⇒



## 2 to end call

## More Features

## Advanced

## Outgoing Call Functions

- Show/Hide Caller ID
- Adjust Earpiece (Speaker) Volume in Advance
- Add Prefix Numbers

(► P. 3-16)

## Handling Incoming Calls

- Reject Calls
- Place Calls on Hold
- Forward Calls
- Forward Calls to Voice Mail Center

(► P. 3-16)

## Engaged Call Operations

- Handsfree
- Set Image Quality
- Adjust Brightness
- Change White Balance
- Change Color Tone
- Change Photo Mode
- Backlight Lighting Time

(► P. 3-17)





### Customize

#### Outgoing Calls

- Save Prefix Numbers
  - Set Numbers after “\*” as Sub Address
- (▶ P. 13-16)

#### Display Settings

- Set an Outgoing Call Image
- (▶ P. 13-4)

#### Incoming Call Alerts

- Adjust Ringtone Volume
- Set a Ringtone
- Set Vibration
- Set Illumination Color
- Set an Incoming Call Image
- Show Phone Book Entry Images for Incoming Calls

(▶ P. 13-11)

#### Call Settings

- Set Reconnection Tone
- Set Noise Reduction
- Set Weak Signal Alarm
- Set Illumination Color for Incoming Calls during Calls
- Set to Mute by Closing Handset
- Set to End Call by Closing Handset

- Set a Hold Message

(▶ P. 13-17)

#### Video Calls

- Set an Image to be Sent during Video Calls
- Redial Automatically as Voice Call When Video Call Connection Fails
- Set an Image to Appear in Main Window
- Automatically Switch to Handsfree Mode in Video Calls

(▶ P. 13-19)




















### Dialing from Call Logs

Phone numbers and dates and times of incoming/outgoing calls are saved on handset as call logs. Access call logs to return calls quickly.

### Call Log Indicators

The following indicators appear in Redial, Dialed Calls and Received Calls windows to indicate call log types.

 /  / 	Voice Calls: Outgoing & Incoming/ Missed/Unchecked Missed
 /  / 	International Calls: Outgoing & Incoming/ Missed/Unchecked Missed
 /  / 	Video Calls: Outgoing & Incoming/ Missed/Unchecked Missed
 /  / 	International Video Calls: Outgoing & Incoming/ Missed/Unchecked Missed
 / 	Answering Machine: Voice Messages/Video Messages

	Packet Transmission
	Outgoing & Incoming Calls in a time zone other than <i>GMT+09</i> with the summer time setting reflected regardless of <i>Auto time adjust</i> setting.

### Redial/Received Calls

1  

Redial	
8/ 1 9:45	Masami Akima
7/31 20:21	Rikio Kitagawa
7/29 11:56	Taro Nakayama
7/28 21:13	090392****7
7/25 10:32	Eisuke Ozawa
7/20 19:56	090392****6


Redial Window

Received calls	
8/ 1 12:58	Taro Nakayama
7/31 22:06	080680****5
7/27 7:12	080680****5
7/18 20:47	080680****5
7/15 14:26	Eisuke Ozawa
7/11 8:53	Rikio Kitagawa

Received Calls Window

2  

■ To Check Details of a Record

⇒ Select a record ⇒ 

### Dialed Calls

1  ⇒ **Own Data** ⇒  ⇒

**Dialed Calls** ⇒ 

Dialed calls 1/2	
8/ 1 9:45	Masami Akima
7/31 20:21	Rikio Kitagawa
7/29 11:56	Taro Nakayama
7/28 21:13	090392****7
7/27 15:27	Taro Nakayama
7/25 10:32	Eisuke Ozawa

Dialed Calls Window

2  

■ To Check Details of a Record

⇒ Select a record ⇒ 





## Checking Number of Missed Calls

- 1 ⇒ **Own Data** ⇒ ⇒ **Received Calls** ⇒

The total number of incoming calls, number of missed calls, and number of unchecked missed calls are shown.

- 2 **All calls or Missed calls** ⇒

### ● Unchecked Missed Calls

Illumination flashes.

When 不在/新着確認設定 (Info notice setting) is set to ボイス (Voice)\*, and you press while handset is closed, handset reads out the caller's name, etc.

Illumination goes out when you have checked all the missed calls, or when you press and hold .

\* Only available when interface language is set to 日本語 (Japanese) (P. 13-6).

## Call Time & Cost

Check the total and last call times and costs.

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Call Time/Charge** ⇒ ⇒ **Call data** ⇒

### Tip

- Use indicated call times and costs only as a guide. The actual call time and cost may be different. Your handset may not indicate call costs depending on the service you subscribe. Indicated costs do not include consumption tax.
- When the last or total call time exceeds 199 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds, counting is reset to 0 seconds and restarts.

## More Features

### Advanced

Redial, Dialed Calls & Received Calls

- Change Font Size
- Show Ring Time (Missed Calls)
- Delete Records

(▶ P. 3-18)

Call Time & Cost

- Reset Total Call Time
- Reset Total Call Cost

(▶ P. 3-19)

### Customize

Checking Call Logs

- Emit Beeps to Notify of Missed Calls When is Pressed
- Read Out Callers' Info of Missed Calls When is Pressed
- Change Colors of Names/Phone Numbers in Call Log Windows

(▶ P. 13-13)

Call Costs

- Set Auto Reset of Total Call Cost
- Set/Cancel a Maximum Call Cost Limit

(▶ P. 13-18)





### Abbreviated Dialing

Just press a number key from **0** to **9** and then **[P]** to call Phone Book entries with entry numbers 000 to 009.

- If a Phone Book entry has more than one phone number, handset dials the first number.

**1** **0** to **9** ⇒ **[P]**/**[M]**

### Dialing from Tomo-Den

Save frequently accessed Phone Book entries to Tomo-Den to quickly make calls or send messages.

- Tomo-Den is unavailable in Secret Data Only Mode.
- Although Tomo-Den is available in Secret Mode, secret Phone Book entries cannot be saved to Tomo-Den.

### Saving Entries to Tomo-Den

**1** **[MENU]** ⇒ **Own Data** ⇒ **[■]** ⇒ **Tomo-Den** ⇒ **[■]**



Tomo-Den Window

**2** **[P]** to select a tab ⇒ **[M]** ⇒ **Search Phone Book** ⇒ **Select an entry** ⇒ **[■]**

**3** **Select a phone number/ e-mail address** ⇒ **[■]**

When a checkbox is selected, other numbers/addresses become grayed and cannot be selected. To select another number/address, first cancel the currently selected checkbox.

**4** **[M]**

### Dialing/Sending Messages from Tomo-Den

**1** **[MENU]** ⇒ **Own Data** ⇒ **[■]** ⇒ **Tomo-Den** ⇒ **[■]**

**2** **[P]** to select an entry ⇒ **CALL, MAIL or VIDEO CALL** ⇒ **[■]**

**[■]** To Send an S! Mail to All Tomo-Den Entries

⇒ **[P]** ⇒ **Broadcast mail** ⇒ **[■]** ⇒ Compose S! Mail

### More Features

#### Advanced

Speed Dial

- Cancel Entries from Tomo-Den
- Change Tomo-Den Entry Image

(► P. 3-19)





# Calling While Abroad (Global Roaming)

Make calls while overseas.

- Global Roaming Service may require prior application.
- Take "Global Roaming Guide" with you when traveling abroad.
- For details on Global Roaming Service, see "Global Roaming Guide" or contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-46).

## Calling Japan and Other Countries

### 1 Press and hold

"+" is entered.


### 2 Enter country code and phone number with area code (excluding the first "0")



#### Tip

- Do not omit the first "0" from area code when calling Italy.

## Calling within the Same Country

- 1 Enter phone number with area code 
- Do not omit "0" from area code.
  - Country code not required.

## More Features

### Customize

#### Global Roaming

- Set Operator
  - Activate Network Re-search for an Available Operator
  - Set Priority for Operators
  - Show Operator Name While Roaming
- (▶ P. 13-20)





### Overview

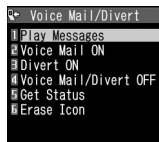
Call Forward	Forward calls to a preset phone number.
Voice Mail	Forward calls to Voice Mail Center when you cannot answer calls. <b>Missed Call Notification</b> (SMS) arrives for missed calls while handset was off, out of range or engaged, etc.
Call Waiting*	Place the current call on hold to answer another incoming call. Talk with two parties alternately.
Multi Party Call*	Call others during a call and talk with multiple parties simultaneously.
Call Barring	Restrict incoming/outgoing calls and SMS.
Caller ID	Show or hide your number when making calls.

\* Separate application is required.

### Activating Call Forward

<Example> Forward calls to a specified number after a set ring time

- 1 ⇒ **Optional Services** ⇒ ⇒ **Voice Mail/Divert** ⇒



Voice Mail/Divert Window

- 2 **Divert ON** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ⇒ **Voice/Video Calls, Voice Calls or Video Calls** ⇒ ⇒ **Enter phone number**

■ **To Search from Phone Book**

- ⇒ to select a search method ⇒ ⇒ **Search Phone Book** ⇒ **Select an entry** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a phone number** ⇒

- 3 ⇒ **No Answer** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a ring time** ⇒

■ **To Forward Calls Immediately**  
⇒ **Always** ⇒

### Tip

- If **No Answer** is set, press to answer incoming call before the call is forwarded. If **Always** is set, handset does not ring/vibrate and all calls are forwarded to the preset number.
- Call Forward and Voice Mail cannot be set simultaneously. Call Forward for video calls is only available with Voice Mail.
- If you activate Call Forward when Voice Mail has already been set, Voice Mail is canceled.





### Activating Voice Mail

<Example> Forward calls to Voice Mail Center after a set ring time

#### 1 [Voice Mail/Divert] window

⇒ **Voice Mail ON** ⇒ ⇒

**YES** ⇒

#### 2 **No Answer** ⇒ ⇒ Select a ring time ⇒

■ **To Forward Calls to Voice Mail Center Immediately**

⇒ **Always** ⇒

#### Tip

- If **No Answer** is set, press to answer incoming call before the call is forwarded to Voice Mail Center. If **Always** is set, handset does not ring/vibrate and all calls are forwarded to Voice Mail Center.
- Voice Mail and Call Forward cannot be set simultaneously. Voice Mail is only available with Call Forward for video calls.
- If you activate Voice Mail when Call Forward has already been set, Call Forward is canceled.

### Missed Call Notification

SMS notification informs you of missed calls while handset was off, out of range, engaged, etc.

#### 1

Follow voice guidance.

### To Play Messages

#### 1 [Voice Mail/Divert] window

⇒ **Play Messages** ⇒ ⇒

**YES** ⇒

### Canceling Call Forward/Voice Mail

#### 1 [Voice Mail/Divert] window

⇒ **Voice Mail/Divert OFF**

⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

### More Features

#### **Advanced**

#### Call Forward & Voice Mail

- Delete Desktop Notifications for Recorded Messages

- Check Current Setting Status

▶ P. 3-19

#### Call Waiting

- Set Call Waiting
- Answer Incoming Calls during Calls
- Check Current Setting Status

▶ P. 3-19

#### Multi Party Call

- Hold Current Call to Make Another Call
- Switch Parties
- Talk with Multiple Parties Simultaneously
- Talk with a Specific Party
- End Call with a Specific Party

▶ P. 3-20

#### Call Barring

- Restrict Incoming/Outgoing Calls & SMS
- Cancel Call Barring
- Change Network Password
- Check Current Setting Status

▶ P. 3-20

#### Caller ID

- Show/Hide Phone Number
- Check Current Setting Status

▶ P. 3-21





## Outgoing Call Functions

### Start Here

[Phone Number Entry] window  
..... P. 3-3

### Voice & Video Calls

#### Show/Hide Caller ID

[Phone Number Entry] window →  
[P] → **Notify Caller ID** → [■] → **OFF**,  
**ON** or **Cancel prefix** → [■] → [✎]/  
[✉]

☞ Alternatively, enter "186" before the phone number to show your number, or "184" to hide your number.

☞ Specify Caller ID setting prior to each call from Phone Book entry/Redial/Dialed Calls/Received Calls windows.

#### Adjust Earpiece (Speaker) Volume in Advance

Press and hold [🔊] → [🔊] or [🔊]

#### Add Prefix Numbers

[Phone Number Entry] window →  
[P] → **Prefix numbers** → [■] →  
Select an item → [■] → [✎]/[✉]

☞ You can also add prefix numbers from Phone Book entry/Redial/Dialed Calls/Received Calls windows.

☞ Only 国際発信 (International call: 0046010) is preset as a prefix number at the time of purchase.

## International Calls

#### Enter "+" to Call Abroad

Press and hold [0] → Enter country code → Enter area code → Enter phone number → [✎] → **Dial** → [■]

☞ "+" appears when you press and hold [0], indicating that the international code set in **Auto int'l call set.** is entered.

## Handling Incoming Calls

### Voice & Video Calls

#### Reject Calls

When a call arrives → [P] → **Call Rejection** → [■]

#### Place Calls on Hold

When a call arrives → [⏸] →  
When you can answer call → [✎]  
☞ Press [⏸] again to end the call on hold.

#### Forward Calls

When a call arrives → [P] → **Call Forwarding** → [■]  
☞ This procedure is available when Call Forward has been activated from Voice Mail/Divert window.





### Voice Calls

#### Forward Calls to Voice Mail Center

When a call arrives → → **Call Forwarding** →

This procedure is available when Voice Mail has been activated from Voice Mail/Divert window.

### Engaged Call Operations

#### Start Here

[Voice Call] window ..... P. 3-3

[Video Call] window ..... P. 3-7

### Voice & Video Calls

#### Handsfree

[Voice Call] window/ [Video Call] window →

Press again to cancel handsfree mode.

### Voice Calls

#### Send Touch Tones

[Voice Call] window → (twice)  
→ **Settings** → → **Dialing** →   
→ **Pause dial** → (twice)

Each time you press , a touch tone sequence until “p” (pause) is sent.

Save touch tones in advance (P. 13-16).

- To send touch tones all at once:  
→ Press and hold → **Send at one time** →

### Video Calls

#### Set Image Quality

[Video Call] window → → **V.phone settings** → → **Visual prefer.** → → Select an item →

### Adjust Brightness

[Video Call] window → → **V.phone settings** → → **Brightness** → → Select a level →

### Change White Balance

[Video Call] window → → **V.phone settings** → → **White balance** → → Select an item →

### Change Color Tone

[Video Call] window → → **V.phone settings** → → **Color mode set** → → Select an item →





### Change Photo Mode

[Video Call] window **V.phone settings** **Photo mode** Select a mode

This procedure is available when sending the camera image.

### Backlight Lighting Time

[Video Call] window **Display light** **All time ON** or **10 seconds ON**

### Answering Machine

#### Start Here

[Play/Delete Voice Message] window  
..... P. 3-4

### Delete Recorded Messages

[Play/Delete Voice Message] window Select a message **Delete this, Delete rec. msg.** or **Delete all**

Selecting **Delete all** also deletes a voice memo if it has been saved.

## Call Logs

### Redial, Dialed Calls & Received Calls

#### Start Here

[Redial] window ..... P. 3-10  
[Dialed Calls] window ..... P. 3-10  
[Received Calls] window ..... P. 3-10

### Change Font Size

[Redial] window/ [Dialed Calls] window/ [Received Calls] window  
 **Big font** or **Standard font**

### Show Ring Time (Missed Calls)

[Received Calls] window **Ring time**

### Delete Records

[Redial] window/ [Dialed Calls] window/ [Received Calls] window  
 **Delete** **Delete this, Delete selected** or **Delete all**  
 ( Select records or enter Handset Code )  
 **YES**

Selecting **Delete all** in Redial window or Dialed Calls window deletes all records from both Redial and Dialed Calls.





### Call Time & Cost

#### Reset Total Call Time

**MENU** ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ **Call Time/Charge** ⇒ **Reset total** ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒ **Reset total duration** ⇒ **YES**

#### Reset Total Call Cost

**MENU** ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ **Call Time/Charge** ⇒ **Reset total** ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒ **Reset total cost** ⇒ **YES** ⇒ Enter PIN2

## Speed Dial

### Start Here

[Tomo-Den] window ..... P. 3-12

### Cancel Entries from Tomo-Den

[Tomo-Den] window ⇒ to select a tab ⇒ **Release this** or **Release all** ⇒ (⇒ Enter Handset Code) ⇒ **YES**

### Change Tomo-Den Entry Image

[Tomo-Den] window ⇒ to select a tab ⇒ **Image** ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ Select an image

## Optional Services

### Start Here

[Voice Mail/Divert] window .... P. 3-14  
[Voice Call] window ..... P. 3-3

### Call Forward & Voice Mail

#### Delete Desktop Notifications for Recorded Messages

[Voice Mail/Divert] window ⇒ **Erase Icon** ⇒ **YES**

### Check Current Setting Status

[Voice Mail/Divert] window ⇒ **Get Status**

### Call Waiting

#### Set Call Waiting

**MENU** ⇒ **Optional Services** ⇒ **Call Waiting** ⇒ **ON** or **OFF** ⇒ **YES**

#### Answer Incoming Calls during Calls

[Voice Call] window ⇒ Call waiting tone sounds ⇒ Press to toggle between two parties.

### Check Current Setting Status

**MENU** ⇒ **Optional Services** ⇒ **Call Waiting** ⇒ **Get Status**









### Multi Party Call

#### Hold Current Call to Make Another Call


[Voice Call] window → CLR → Enter phone number →

To dial from Phone Book, press , search Phone Book, select a number and then press .



To dial from Dialed/Received Calls, use  to select a phone number/name and then press .

#### Switch Parties




[Voice Call] window → 

Press  to toggle parties.

#### Talk with Multiple Parties Simultaneously




[Voice Call] window → While talking with one party →  → Join Multi Party → 

### Talk with a Specific Party

[Voice Call] window → While talking with multiple parties →  → Select Ans. Call →  → Select a party → 







The other parties are placed on hold while talking with the selected party.

### End Call with a Specific Party

[Voice Call] window → While talking with multiple parties →  → Select Disc call →  → Select a party → 

### Call Barring

#### Restrict Incoming/Outgoing Calls & SMS

MENU → Optional Services →  → Call Barring →  → Outgoing Calls or Incoming Calls →  → Select an item →  → YES →  → Enter Network Password → 

You can call emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118 even when Call Barring is set.







When Bar All Outgoing Calls or Bar All Incoming Calls is set for Call Barring, Call Forward is unavailable (Call Barring takes priority).

If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, Call Barring settings are locked. Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-46).


















### Cancel Call Barring

 ⇒ **Optional Services** ⇒  ⇒  
**Call Barring** ⇒  ⇒ **Cancel All**  
**Barring** ⇒  ⇒ **YES** ⇒  ⇒  
 Enter Network Password ⇒ 

### Change Network Password

 ⇒ **Optional Services** ⇒  ⇒  
**Call Barring** ⇒  ⇒ **Set NW**  
**Password** ⇒  ⇒ **YES** ⇒  ⇒  
 Enter current Network Password  
 ⇒  ⇒ Enter new Network  
 Password ⇒  ⇒ Enter new  
 Network Password again for  
 confirmation ⇒ 

### Check Current Setting Status





 ⇒ **Optional Services** ⇒  ⇒  
**Call Barring** ⇒  ⇒ **Get Status** ⇒  
 ⇒ Select an item ⇒ 

### Caller ID

#### Show/Hide Phone Number

 ⇒ **Optional Services** ⇒  ⇒  
**Caller ID Notification** ⇒  ⇒  
**Activate/Deactivate** ⇒  ⇒ **ON**  
 or **OFF** ⇒  ⇒ **YES** ⇒ 

#### Check Current Setting Status

 ⇒ **Optional Services** ⇒  ⇒  
**Caller ID Notification** ⇒  ⇒ **Get**  
**Status** ⇒ 







# Security



<b>PIN Settings.....</b>	<b>4-2</b>
Setting PIN1 Entry .....	4-2
Changing PIN1/PIN2 .....	4-2
<b>Prohibiting Unauthorized Handset</b>	
<b>Use .....</b>	<b>4-3</b>
Activating Dial Lock .....	4-3
Setting Original Lock .....	4-3
Disabling Keypad .....	4-4
Using Secure Remote Lock .....	4-4
<b>Prohibiting Outgoing/Incoming</b>	
<b>Calls .....</b>	<b>4-5</b>
Rejecting Calls without Caller ID.....	4-5
Rejecting Calls from Numbers Not Saved	
in Phone Book .....	4-5
Delaying Ringtone for Numbers Not	
Saved in Phone Book .....	4-5
Self Mode .....	4-5
<b>Setting Secret Data .....</b>	<b>4-6</b>
Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode ...	4-6
Hiding Handset Data .....	4-6









## 4














## Setting PIN1 Entry

Set to require PIN1 entry each time handset is turned on.

- 1  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **Lock/Security** ⇒  ⇒ **PIN setting** ⇒ 
- 2 Enter Handset Code ⇒ 
- 3 **PIN1 code entry set** ⇒  ⇒ **ON** or **OFF** ⇒  ⇒ Enter PIN1 ⇒ 

## Changing PIN1/PIN2

● *PIN1 code entry set* must be set to **ON** before changing PIN1.

- 1  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **Lock/Security** ⇒  ⇒ **PIN setting** ⇒ 
- 2 Enter Handset Code ⇒ 
- 3 **Change PIN1 code** or **Change PIN2 code** ⇒ 
- 4 Enter current PIN1/PIN2 ⇒ 
- 5 Enter new PIN1/PIN2 ⇒  ⇒ Enter new PIN1/PIN2 again for confirmation ⇒ 





## Activating Dial Lock

Activate Dial Lock to prevent others from operating handset.

- 1 **MENU** ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ **Lock/Security** ⇒ **Lock** ⇒ **Lock**

- 2 Enter Handset Code ⇒ **Lock**

- 3 **Dial lock** ⇒ **Lock**

### Tip

- The following operations are possible even when Dial Lock is activated:
  - Power on/off
  - Calling emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118
  - Answering incoming voice/video calls

## Canceling Dial Lock

- 1 When Dial Lock is set ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒ **Lock**

■ If Handset Code is Incorrectly Entered

- ⇒ **Reset lock** ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒ **Lock**

### Tip

- If you fail to cancel Dial Lock five times consecutively, handset is turned off. However, it can be turned on again to cancel the lock.

## Setting Original Lock

Prevent others from accessing handset functions/data (e.g. Phone Book, Mail, etc.) that contain personal information. Original locks can be customized.

### Activating Original Lock

- 1 **MENU** ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ **Lock/Security** ⇒ **Lock** ⇒ **Lock**
- 2 Enter Handset Code ⇒ **Lock**



Lock Window

- 3 **Original lock 1 - Original lock 3** ⇒ **Lock**

Functions/data specified under the selected lock type are locked.

### ■ To Edit Title

- ⇒ Select an Original lock ⇒ **Edit title** ⇒ **Edit title** ⇒ **Edit title**

### ● When Original Lock is Set

Handset Code entry is requested when accessing a locked function or data. Enter Handset Code to unlock and access function/data. Setting returns when handset returns to Standby.

- *Dial/sending mail and Incoming/Mail disp.* cannot be unlocked temporarily.

## Customizing Original Lock

Select functions/data that you want to lock.

- 1 **[Lock] window** ⇒ Select an Original lock ⇒ **Lock**

Indicator description:

- One or more functions/data are selected to be locked.
- ALL All functions/data are selected to be locked.





## Prohibiting Unauthorized Handset Use

### 2 Select an item ⇒

Repeat this step until the function/data you want to lock/unlock appears.

#### ■ To Select All Functions/Data under Selected Item

Before pressing in step 2 ⇒ ⇒ **Select** ⇒

#### ■ To Deselect All Functions/Data under Selected Item

Before pressing in step 2 ⇒ ⇒ **Release** ⇒

#### ■ To Select All Items Including Selected Item

Before pressing in step 2 ⇒ ⇒ **Select all** ⇒

#### ■ To Deselect All Items Including Selected Item

Before pressing in step 2 ⇒ ⇒ **Release all** ⇒

### 3 Select a function/data item ⇒

Repeat this step to select other functions/data. Press again to cancel.

### 4 [Finish] (2 or 3 times) ⇒

The number of times must be pressed depends on the function/data.

## Disabling Keypad

Set Keypad Lock to automatically lock handset keys when handset is closed or when handset is not operated for a certain period of time.

### Setting Keypad Lock

1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Lock/Security** ⇒ ⇒ **Keypad lock** ⇒

2 Enter Handset Code ⇒

3 **After folded or Timer** ⇒ ⇒ **Select an item** ⇒ ⇒

#### ● When Keypad Lock is Set

All key operations are disabled, except for answering incoming calls, showing clock with and turning power on/off.

When a call arrives or the alarm is activated, appears at the bottom of Display to indicate some keys are operable.

### Tip

- You can still call emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118 even when Keypad Lock is set.

## Temporarily Unlocking Keypad Lock

1 When Keypad Lock is set ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒

## Using Secure Remote Lock

If your handset is lost, lock handset functions remotely from a PC or other mobile phones. Once the lock is set, all key operations are disabled except for turning the power on. For details, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>), or access My SoftBank from your handset by the following procedure:

⇒ **メニューリスト (Menu List)** ⇒ ⇒ **My SoftBank** ⇒





## Rejecting Calls without Caller ID

Incoming calls from hidden and/or unidentified numbers can be rejected.

1 **MENU** ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ **Lock/Security** ⇒ **Call setting w/o ID**

2 Enter Handset Code

3 **Unknown, Payphone or User unset**

4 **Reject**

■ To Receive Incoming Calls

⇒ **Accept** ⇒ **Select ring tone** or **Select calling disp.**

⇒ Select a folder ⇒ Select a sub folder ⇒ Select a ringtone/image

## Rejecting Calls from Numbers Not Saved in Phone Book

1 **MENU** ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ **Lock/Security** ⇒ **Reject unknown**

2 Enter Handset Code

3 **Reject**

■ To Receive Incoming Calls

⇒ **Accept**

### Note

- This procedure is unavailable when *Set mute seconds* under *Ring time (sec.)* is set to **ON** (see the following section).

## Delaying Ringtone for Numbers Not Saved in Phone Book

Delay ringtone, for calls from numbers not saved in Phone Book. It can prevent you from accidentally returning calls to nuisance calls from Received Calls; as missed calls with very short ring times are not saved in Received Calls, when **Missed calls display** is set to **Not display**.

- This procedure is unavailable when *Reject unknown* is set to **Reject**.

1 **MENU** ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ **Incoming Call Ring time (sec.)**

2 **Set mute seconds ON** ⇒ Enter time before ringtone plays

■ To Set 0 Seconds

⇒ **OFF**

3 **Missed calls display** ⇒ **Display or Not display**

### Tip

- Secret Phone Book entries are also treated as not saved in Phone Book.
- You need not to specify a time when **OFF** is selected.

## Self Mode

The following are prohibited in Self Mode:

- Incoming/Outgoing Calls
- Incoming/Outgoing Messages
- Yahoo! Keitai Access

1 **MENU** ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ **Lock/Security** ⇒ **Self mode** ⇒ **YES**

Repeat procedure to cancel Self Mode.

### Tip

- Emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) are available even in Self Mode.





## Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode

Activate Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode to view secret Phone Book entries, secret Schedule events and secret files.

Secret Mode:

View all data and secret data.

Secret Data Only Mode:

Only secret data is available.

## Activating Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode

- 1  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **Lock/Security** ⇒  ⇒ **Secret mode or Secret data only mode** ⇒ 
- 2 Enter Handset Code ⇒ 

## Canceling Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode

- 1 

### Tip



- Making or receiving a call cancels Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode.

## Hiding Handset Data





Files stored in Secret Folders are accessible only when Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode is activated.

- The following data can be stored in Secret Folders: Images, videos, received/sent messages, and bookmarks of Yahoo! Keitai and PC Browser
- Data saved on memory card cannot be stored in Secret Folders.
- Each Secret Folder of Data Folder has a fixed storage capacity as follows:
  - My Picture: Approx. 2 MB
  - Videos: Approx. 10 MB

## Storing Data in Secret Folders

- 1 Set handset to Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode
- 2 In a data list window ⇒ Select a data item ⇒  ⇒ **Keep in secret** ⇒ 

## Returning Data in Secret Folders to Ordinary Data

- 1 Set handset to Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode
- 2 In a data folder list window ⇒ **Secret** ⇒ 
- 3 Select a data item ⇒  ⇒ **Put out** ⇒ 
- 4 Select a destination folder ⇒ 

### Tip

- Functions available with Secret Folder data are limited.



# Mail



<b>Overview .....</b>	<b>5-2</b>
<b>Sending Messages .....</b>	<b>5-3</b>
Sending S! Mail .....	5-3
Sending SMS Messages .....	5-4
<b>Receiving &amp; Opening Messages .....</b>	<b>5-6</b>
Opening New Messages .....	5-6
Opening Inbox Messages .....	5-6
Replying to Messages .....	5-7
Using Mail List .....	5-7
<b>Handling Messages .....</b>	<b>5-9</b>
Message Storage Locations .....	5-9
Opening Sent/Received Messages .....	5-9
Sorting Messages .....	5-11
Prohibiting Access to Messages .....	5-11
Saving S! Mail Attachments .....	5-12
<b>Advanced Features .....</b>	<b>5-14</b>
Sending Messages .....	5-14
Receiving/Opening Messages .....	5-17
Managing/Using Messages .....	5-19

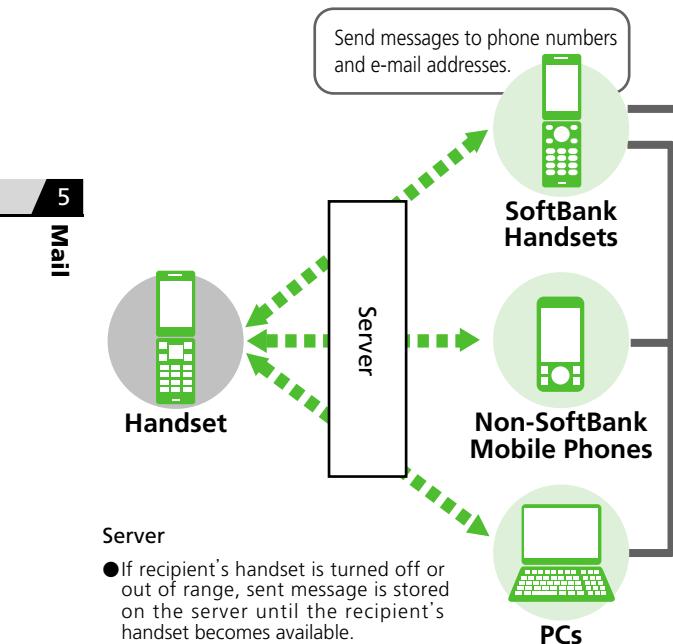
# 5





## Overview

Handset supports S! Mail and SMS.



### Available Mail Services

#### SMS

Exchange short text messages with other SoftBank handsets.

#### S! Mail (Separate contract required)

Exchange long text messages with S! Mail compatible SoftBank handsets and other e-mail compatible mobile phones and PCs. Images and melodies can also be attached to S! Mail.

#### Customize Handset E-mail Address.

Composing a long address by combining alphanumeric and symbols is recommended; as it is an effective way to block spam.

#### Graphic Mail

Use HTML mail to change font size/color, background, etc.

#### Emotion-Expressing Mail

Based on sender's message, handset shows a pictogram matching the sender's mood.





## Sending S! Mail

### 1 Press and hold



Composition Window

### 2 Select address field

**Enter address**

**Enter address**

#### ■ Adding Recipients

Select address field

**Enter address** Enter address

### 3 Select Subject field

**Enter subject**

If (double-byte mode) appears, switch to single-byte mode (P. 2-26).

### 4 Select text field

**Enter text**



Text Entry Window

### 5

#### ■ To Cancel Transmission

When **Start Packet Connection** appears ; or

During Transmission

#### ■ If **Resend mail?** Appears

**YES**

## Attaching Files

Attach the following files to S! Mail:

- Images
- Videos
- Melodies
- Music (Songs)
- Phone Book entries
- Account Details
- Calendar
- Bookmarks (Schedule/To Do List)

\* For information about image, video, melody and music files, see P. 11-2.

### 1 [Composition] window

**Attach file**

### 2 Select a file type

( **Enter Handset Code**

**Select a file**

#### ■ Images with Large File Size

**Attach mail** or **QVGA scale down**

#### ■ Attach Additional Files

Repeat steps 1 and 2 above

#### ■ Open an Attached File

Select an attached file

## Note

- Copy protected files cannot be sent as attachments or output to external devices.










## Graphic Mail


Create html messages to change font color/size and background color. Add scrolling text, paste images, etc.

**<Example>** Change font size, background color, insert an image and set flashing text.


## Mail 5

1 [Text Entry] window →   
 →  →  → Select a font  
 size →  → Enter text →   
 (twice)

2      to select a background color  

- **To Toggle Color Palettes**
  - ➡ In Background color window ➡
  -  Toggle between 25-color and 256-color palettes.

3     **Select a folder**  
   **Select an image**   


■Inserting Images with Large File Size  
⇒ Insert mail or SubQCIF scale  
down ⇒ 

4  →  →  →  → 

Enter text →  (twice) → 

 →  →  → 

5   

## Adding Addresses to Mail Member List

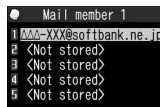
Group addresses into Mail Member list and send messages by group.

1 MENU ➡ **Own Data** ➡  ➡ **Mail Member** ➡ 






## Mail Member List Window

**2 Select a Mail Member list** ➡



### Mail Member Details Window

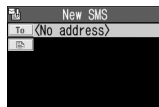
3 **<Not stored>** →  → Enter  
address → 

■ To Save an Address from Phone Book or Sent/Received Address List  
 ➡ <Not stored> ➡  ➡ Look-up address ➡  ➡ Phonebook, Sent address or Received address ➡   
 ➡ Select an address ➡ 

## Sending SMS Messages

Send short text messages to SoftBank handsets, specifying phone numbers as address.

1  **Compose SMS** 



### SMS Composition Window

2     **Enter address**  
   Enter phone  
number  

3     Enter text  







## More Features



### Advanced

#### Composing Messages

- Enter Address from Phone Book
- Enter Address from Sent/Received Address List
- Specify Recipients from a Mail Member List
- Set To/Cc/Bcc
- Delete an Address
- Insert Header/Signature
- Enter My Pictograms
- Select SMS Input Language
- Delete Text
- Change SMS Message to S! Mail

(▶ P. 5-14)

#### Sending Messages

- Set Priority (S! Mail)
- Server Storage Period (SMS)
- Check Delivery
- Save a Message to Draft without Transmitting It
- Delete a Message without Transmitting It

(▶ P. 5-15)

#### Attaching Files

- Shoot an Image/Video to Attach to S! Mail
- Delete Files Attached to S! Mail

(▶ P. 5-16)

#### Mail Member

- Edit an Address
- Delete Addresses from a Mail Member List
- Edit a Mail Member List Name
- Reset a Mail Member List Name

(▶ P. 5-16)

#### Graphic Mail

- Apply Effects to Entered Text
- Change Effects
- Cancel Last Applied Effect
- Preview Graphic Mail
- Cancel All Effects
- Create Graphic Mail Automatically
- Save Graphic Mail as a Template
- Download Templates
- Create Graphic Mail from a Template
- Edit a Template
- Edit Title of a Template
- Delete Templates

(▶ P. 5-16)



### Customize

#### S! Mail Settings

- Edit Header/Signature
- Insert Header/Signature Automatically
- Set to Check Delivery

(▶ P. 13-21)

#### SMS Settings

- Set to Check Delivery
- Set Server Storage Period of SMS Messages
- Set SMS Input Language

(▶ P. 13-21)





## Opening New Messages

When a message is received, Received Results window appears.

### ● Emotion-Expressing Mail

When an S! Mail is received, a pictogram matching the message content appears.

If a message contains a specific keyword, a corresponding indicator appears (P. 13-22).



Indicator

Received Results Window

### ● Indicators

	Urgent		Advice
	Love		Try Hard
	Hate		Invitation
	Happy		Feedback
	Angry		Request
	Sad		Announcement
	Fun		OK
	Surprise		Reply
	Question		Information

\* appears if message content does not match any of the above mood/information.

### 1 [Received Results] window

⇒ **Mail** ⇒

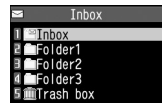
### 2 Select a message ⇒

### Tip

- Alternatively open new messages from desktop notification.
- Indicator may not always correspond to message content.

## Opening Inbox Messages

### 1 ⇒ **Inbox** ⇒



Folder List Window

### 2 Select a folder ⇒



Message List Window





## 3 Select a message →



Message Details Window

- To Check Previous/Next Message  
→

### Tip

- Some attachments may require content keys to open/play the file.

## Replying to Messages

- 1 [Inbox Message List]  
window → Select a message  
→ → → Reply →

- To Quote Original Message Text  
→ → Reply with quote →   
" > " is inserted at the beginning of each line of quoted text.

- When Original Message Has Multiple Recipients  
→ To sender or To all →

- 2 Edit subject/text →

### Tip

- Attachments are automatically deleted from reply messages.
- Quoting text is only available for S! Mail replies.

## Using Mail List

Retrieve Mail List and select messages to download or forward.

- 1 → Server Mail → → Mail list → → YES →



Mail List Window

- 2 Select a message → → Message receive → → Receive this →

- To Receive Multiple Messages  
→ → Message receive → → Receive selected → → Select messages →





## Receiving & Opening Messages

### ■ To Receive All Messages

⇒ ⇒ **Message receive** ⇒ ⇒

**Receive all** ⇒

### Tip

- If download fails while retrieving all messages, download is canceled. Successfully downloaded messages appear on handset.

### More Features

#### Advanced

#### Receiving Messages

- Manually Retrieve Messages

(▶ P. 5-17)

#### Checking Messages

- Retrieve Complete S! Mail
- Delete S! Mail from Server
- Read Out Messages
- Check Message Information

(▶ P. 5-18)

#### Server Message Operations

- Update Mail List
- Switch Mail List Views
- Check Server Message Information
- Forward a Server Message
- Delete Server Messages
- Check Server Memory Status

(▶ P. 5-18)

### Customize

#### Incoming Message Alerts

- Adjust Ringtone Volume
- Set a Ringtone
- Set Ringing Duration of Incoming Message Ringtone
- Set Vibration
- Set Illumination Color

(▶ P. 13-11)

#### Incoming Message Settings

- Customize E-mail Address
- Do Not Show Emotion Indicators
- Set Priority When Receiving Messages during Operation
- Set Whether to Read Out Received Messages
- Set Voice to Read Out Messages
- Set Manual Retrieval of S! Mail Text

(▶ P. 13-22)

#### Reply Settings

- Change Quotation Marks

(▶ P. 13-23)





## Message Storage Locations

Sent, received and draft messages are saved in the locations below.



## Opening Sent/Received Messages

<Example> Open a Received Message

1 → **Inbox** →



Folder List Window

2 → **Select a folder** →



Message List Window

3 → **Select a message** →



Message Details Window

→ **To Check Previous/Next Message**  
→

### Tip

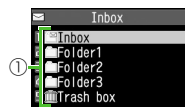
- When Outbox/Inbox becomes full, Trash Box messages and then the oldest messages in Outbox/Inbox are deleted next time a new message is sent/received. Unread and protected messages and Secret Folder messages are not deleted.



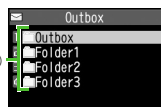


## Mail Windows

Message types, statuses, and attached file types are shown by indicators.



Inbox Folder List Window



Outbox Folder List Window

### Message List Windows

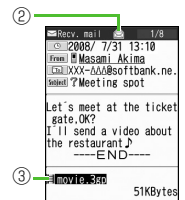


Inbox Message List Window



Outbox Message List Window

### Message Details Windows



Received Message Details Window



Sent Message Details Window

①	Folder Type/Status General Folder Trash Box Folder Secret Folder
②	Message Status Unread Received Message Read Received Message Protected Received Message Forwarded Message Replied Message Message Sent to a Single Recipient Message Sent to Multiple Recipients
③	Message Type/Attached File Type SMS on Handset SMS on USIM Card Message with Delivery Checked S! Mail with Text Unreceived Image Attached/Image Inserted in Text Video Attached Melody Attached Song Attached Copyright-protected File Attached Phone Book Entry/Schedule Event/Bookmark Attached Forwarded Server Message Other Type of File Attached Multiple Files Attached

\* The following marks appear on indicators to inform you:

- Folder Contains Unread Messages
- Locked Folder
- Folder with Auto Sort Set
- Protected Message
- Delivery failed to Some Recipients/Some Attachments Deleted
- Delivery Failed/All Attachments Deleted
- Attachment Deleted
- High Priority Message

### Tip

- Copyright-protected files cannot be opened/played unless they are saved in Data Folder.





## Sorting Messages

Automatically sort incoming/outgoing messages into folders.

### 1 [Folder List] window ⇨

Select a folder ⇨

**Auto-sort** ⇨

■ When Auto Sort is Already Set to the Folder

⇨ Select another criterion ⇨

### 2 **Address sort** ⇨ ⇨ Select

a criterion ⇨ ⇨ Select an

address/group/Mail

Member list or enter

address ⇨

■ To Sort by Subject

⇨ **Subject sort** ⇨ ⇨ Enter

subject ⇨

■ To Sort Messages Failed to be Replied/Sent

⇨ **Reply impossible** or **Send impossible** ⇨

### Tip

- Only one Inbox folder can be specified for sorting *Reply impossible* messages.
- Only one Outbox folder can be specified for sorting *Send impossible* messages.

## Canceling Auto Sort

### 1 [Folder List] window ⇨

Select a folder ⇨

**Auto-sort** ⇨

### 2 Select a criterion ⇨ ⇨

**Release** ⇨

### 3 **Release this** ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨



■ To Cancel Multiple Criteria

⇨ **Release selected** ⇨

Select criteria ⇨ ⇨ ⇨ **YES**

⇨

■ To Cancel All Criteria

⇨ **Release all** ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨

## Prohibiting Access to Messages

### Setting Mail Box Lock

#### 1 ⇨ **Mail Setting** ⇨ ⇨

**Mail box lock** ⇨ ⇨ Enter

Handset Code ⇨

#### 2 Select a mail box ⇨

Repeat step 2 to specify other boxes.

#### 3

### Setting Folder Lock

#### 1 [Folder List] window ⇨

Select a folder ⇨

**Folder lock** ⇨ ⇨ Enter

Handset Code ⇨ ⇨ **YES**

⇨

Locked folders are indicated by .





## Tip

- Repeat the same procedure to cancel folder lock.
- Trash Box folder can also be locked.
- Handset Code entry is required to view messages in locked mail boxes and folders.

## Storing Messages in Secret Folders

Set handset to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode beforehand (P. 4-6).

- 1 [Message List] window  $\Rightarrow$   
Select a message  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$   
**Keep in secret**  $\Rightarrow$

- 2 **Keep this**  $\Rightarrow$

- To Store Multiple Messages  
 $\Rightarrow$  **Keep selected**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Select a message  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Repeat the same step to specify other messages  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **YES**  $\Rightarrow$

- To Store All Messages in a Folder  
 $\Rightarrow$  **Keep all**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **YES**  $\Rightarrow$

## Returning Messages in Secret Folders to Ordinary Messages

- 1 [Folder List] window  $\Rightarrow$   
**Secret**  $\Rightarrow$
- 2 Select a message  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$   
**Put out**  $\Rightarrow$
- 3 **Put out this**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Select a folder  $\Rightarrow$ 
  - To Return Multiple Messages  
 $\Rightarrow$  **Put out selected**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Select a folder  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Select a message  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Repeat the same step to specify other messages  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **YES**  $\Rightarrow$
  - To Return All Messages  
 $\Rightarrow$  **Put out all**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Select a folder  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **YES**  $\Rightarrow$

## Saving S! Mail Attachments

### Saving Image/Video/Melody/Music/Flash Files

- 1 [Message Details] window  
 $\Rightarrow$  Select a file  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Save data**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **YES**  $\Rightarrow$

- 2 Select a folder  $\Rightarrow$

- To Set an Image as Wallpaper, etc.  
 $\Rightarrow$  **YES**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Select an item  $\Rightarrow$

Select **NO** and press when you do not want to set the image.

- To Set a Melody as Ringtone, etc.  
 $\Rightarrow$  **YES**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Select an item  $\Rightarrow$

Select **NO** and press when you do not want to set the melody.

## Saving an Image Inserted in Text

- 1 [Message Details] window  
 $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Save insert image**  $\Rightarrow$

- 2 Select an image  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$   
**YES**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Select a folder  $\Rightarrow$

- 3 **YES**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Select an item  $\Rightarrow$

- When You Do Not Want to Set the Image  
 $\Rightarrow$  **NO**  $\Rightarrow$





## Saving a Phone Book Entry

- 1 [Message Details] window  
⇒ Select contact information (a phone number, etc.) ⇒ (twice)  
⇒ **Phone** or **USIM** ⇒ ⇒ **New** ⇒

- 2 Edit each item ⇒

## Saving a Schedule Event

- 1 [Message Details] window  
⇒ Select Schedule data ⇒ (twice)

## Saving a Bookmark

- 1 [Message Details] window  
⇒ Select a link (URL, etc.) ⇒ (twice) ⇒ Select a destination ⇒ (⇒ Select a folder ⇒ )

### Note

- Mail-attached bookmarks cannot be saved to *microSD*.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Managing Messages

- Protect a Message
- Move Messages to a Different Folder
- Drop Messages into Trash Box
- Delete Messages
- Delete All Read Messages
- Delete All Delivery Reports
- Delete All Messages in Inbox/Outbox
- Delete Attached Files
- Copy SMS Messages between Handset and USIM Card
- Delete SMS Messages on USIM Card
- Change Message Color
- Add a Folder
- Edit a Folder Name
- Change Order of Folders
- Delete a Folder
- Check Number of Saved Messages
- Check Sent/Received Addresses

(▶ P. 5-19)

#### Using Messages

- Edit a Sent Message
- Edit & Send a Draft Message
- Forward a Message
- Save Sender/Recipient's E-mail Address/Phone Number to Phone Book

- Call a Phone Number in Text
- Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in Text
- Access the Internet from a URL in Text
- Save an E-mail Address/Phone Number in Text to Phone Book
- Search for Information by Keyword
- Switch Subject Field Views
- Change Font Size of Text
- Search for Messages in a Folder
- Sort Messages
- Filter Messages
- Reset Message List View to Default
- Switch All Unread Messages to Read Messages
- Open S! Mail Delivery Report

(▶ P. 5-21)

### Customize

#### Message View Settings & Others

- Set Message List View
- Do Not Play Attached Melodies Automatically
- Set Number of Text Lines to Scroll
- Set Font Size of Text
- Check Mail Settings
- Reset Mail Settings

(▶ P. 13-23)





## Sending Messages

### Start Here

[Composition] window ..... P. 5-3  
 [Text Entry] window ..... P. 5-3  
 [SMS Composition] window ..... P. 5-4  
 [Mail Member List] window ..... P. 5-4  
 [Mail Member Details] window ..... P. 5-4

### Composing Messages

#### Enter Address from Phone Book

[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Search Phone Book  $\Rightarrow$  Select an entry  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Select an e-mail address/ phone number  $\Rightarrow$

#### Enter Address from Sent/Received Address List

[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Sent address** or **Received address**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Select an e-mail address/phone number  $\Rightarrow$  (twice)  
 Alternatively, select and press to open Sent/Received Address List.

#### Specify Recipients from a Mail Member List

[Composition] window  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Mail member**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Select a Mail Member list  $\Rightarrow$    
 All addresses in the selected Mail Member list are entered in the address field.  
 You must save addresses to a Mail Member list in advance.

#### Set To/Cc/Bcc

[Composition] window  $\Rightarrow$  Select an address  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Change rcv. type**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **To**, **Cc** or **Bcc**  $\Rightarrow$    
 Cc (Carbon copy): S! Mail copies are sent to other addresses. Addresses in the Cc field are revealed to the other recipients.  
 Bcc (Blind carbon copy): S! Mail copies are sent to other addresses. Addresses in the Bcc field are hidden to the other recipients.  
 When there is no address in the To field, the message cannot be sent.

#### Delete an Address

[Composition] window  $\Rightarrow$  Select an address  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Delete receiver**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **YES**  $\Rightarrow$

#### Insert Header/Signature


[Composition] window  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Add header** or **Add signature**  $\Rightarrow$






## Advanced Features

### Enter My Pictograms

[Text Entry] window → Press and hold  → Select a pictograph →


 → CLR


 Toggle categories by pressing / .

 My Pictograms are only available for S! Mails.

### Select SMS Input Language

[SMS Composition] window → 

→ **SMS input char.** → 

**Japanese** or **English** → 

### Delete Text


[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window → 

→ **Erase message** → 

→ **YES** → 


### Change SMS Message to S! Mail

[SMS Composition] window → 

→ **S! Mail conversion** → 

### Sending Messages

#### Set Priority (S! Mail)

[Composition] window → 

→ **Priority** →  → **High, Normal** or


**Low** → 


#### Server Storage Period (SMS)

[SMS Composition] window → 


→ **SMS valid. per.** → 



→ Select a period → 


 Specify a period the SMS message is stored in the server in case it fails to reach the recipient because the recipient's handset is out of range, etc.

 When **None** is set, the SMS message is deleted from the server after it is resent once in a certain period of time.

### Check Delivery


[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window →  → **DeliveryReport** or **SMS report req.**


→  → **ON** or **OFF** → 

 When **ON** is set, handset receives a delivery report.

### Save a Message to Draft without Transmitting It

[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window → 

→ **Save** → 

 The message is saved to Draft. Messages saved in Draft can be edited and sent at a later time.

### Delete a Message without Transmitting It

[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window → 

→ **Delete** → 

→ **YES** → 





## Attaching Files

### Shoot an Image/Video to Attach to S! Mail

[Composition] window → → **Activate camera** → → **Photo mode** or **Movie mode** → → Shoot image/video →

### Delete Files Attached to S! Mail

[Composition] window → Select an attached file → → **Delete att. file** or **Del all att. files** → → **YES** →

## Mail Member

### Edit an Address

[Mail Member Details] window → Select an address → → **Edit address** → → Edit address →

### Delete Addresses from a Mail Member List

[Mail Member Details] window → Select an address → → **Delete this** or **Delete all** → (→ Enter Handset Code → ) → **YES** →

### Edit a Mail Member List Name

[Mail Member List] window → Select a Mail Member list → → **Edit member name** → → Edit name →

### Reset a Mail Member List Name

[Mail Member List] window → Select a Mail Member list → → **Reset member name** → → **YES** →

## Graphic Mail

### Apply Effects to Entered Text

[Text Entry] window → → → → Select beginning of characters → → Select end of characters → → Apply effects → Select and press to select the entire text.

### Change Effects

[Text Entry] window → → → → Select beginning of characters → → Select end of characters → → Select an effect menu → → Change effects → Select and press to select the entire text.

### Cancel Last Applied Effect

[Text Entry] window → → →





### Preview Graphic Mail

[Text Entry] window → → → → [CLR]/ to close preview

### Cancel All Effects

[Text Entry] window → → → → YES → (twice)

### Create Graphic Mail Automatically

[Text Entry] window → Enter text → → → → to toggle effects →

Emotion of the message is detected from the entered text, and a set of effects that matches the emotion is automatically applied.

### Save Graphic Mail as a Template

[Text Entry] window → Enter text → → → **Template** → → **Save template** → → YES →

Attached files except images inserted in text are not included in a template.

### Download Templates

→ **Template** → → **Download Templates** → (twice) → Follow onscreen instructions

### Create Graphic Mail from a Template

→ **Template** → → Select a template → →

### Edit a Template

→ **Template** → → Select a template → → → **Edit** → → Edit text → (twice) → YES →

### Edit Title of a Template

→ **Template** → → Select a template → → **Edit title** → → Edit title →

### Delete Templates

→ **Template** → → Select a template → → **Delete** → → **Delete this, Delete selected or Delete all** → (→ Select templates → → or enter Handset Code → → YES →

## Receiving/Opening Messages

### Start Here

[Message Details] window..... P. 5-7

[Mail List] window..... P. 5-7

### Receiving Messages

### Manually Retrieve Messages

→ **Retrieve New** → → Received Results window opens → **Mail** → → Select a message →

Press or press and hold [CLR] to cancel message retrieval.

This procedure allows you to retrieve messages that were stored on the server while handset was off or out of range.





## Checking Messages

### Retrieve Complete S! Mail

⇒ **Inbox** ⇒ ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ⇒ Select an S! Mail notification ⇒ ⇒

An S! Mail notification is deleted when you retrieve the message text.

Use this procedure when *Message Download* under *S! Mail settings* is set to *Manual*.

### Delete S! Mail from Server

⇒ **Inbox** ⇒ ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ⇒ Select an S! Mail notification ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ **Delete** ⇒ ⇒ **Notification, Server mail or Notifi./Server** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

## Read Out Messages

[Message Details] window ⇒ ⇒ **Read out message** ⇒

Press to stop reading.

Press to end reading.

## Check Message Information

[Message List] window ⇒ ⇒ **Mail info** ⇒

This procedure is available only in Inbox Message List window.

## Server Message Operations

### Update Mail List

[Mail List] window ⇒ ⇒ **Mail list** ⇒

### Switch Mail List Views

[Mail List] window ⇒ ⇒ **List setting** ⇒ ⇒ **Subject, Name or Address** ⇒

## Check Server Message Information

[Mail List] window ⇒ Select a message ⇒ ⇒ **Mail info** ⇒

## Forward a Server Message

[Mail List] window ⇒ Select a message ⇒ ⇒ **Forward** ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ Enter address ⇒

## Delete Server Messages

[Mail List] window ⇒ Select a message ⇒ ⇒ **Delete** ⇒ ⇒ **Delete this, Delete selected or Delete all** ⇒ (⇒ Select messages ⇒ ⇒ or enter Handset Code ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

## Check Server Memory Status

⇒ **Server Mail** ⇒ ⇒ **Server mail memory** ⇒





# Managing/Using Messages

## Start Here

[Folder List] window ..... P. 5-9

[Message List] window ..... P. 5-9

[Message Details] window ..... P. 5-9

## Managing Messages

### Protect a Message

[Message Details] window → [P] → **Protect ON/OFF** → [■]

ⓘ This procedure protects an unprotected message, and cancels protection of a protected message.

### Move Messages to a Different Folder

[Message List] window → Select a message → [P] → **Move** → [■] → **Move this, Move selected or Move all** → [■] → Select a destination folder → [■] (→ Select messages → [■] → [M] → **YES** → [■])

ⓘ A message can also be moved to a different folder from Message Details window.

### Drop Messages into Trash Box

[Message List] window → [P] → **Move trash box** → [■] → Select a message → [■] → [M] → **YES** → [■]

ⓘ Protected messages and delivery reports cannot be moved to Trash Box.

### Delete Messages

[Message List] window → Select a message → [P] → **Delete** → [■] → **Delete this, Delete selected or Delete all** → [■] (→ Select messages → [■] → [M] or enter Handset Code → [■]) → **YES** → [■]

ⓘ Protected messages cannot be deleted.

### Delete All Read Messages

[Folder List] window → [P] → **Delete read** → [■] → **YES** → [■]

[Message List] window → [P] → **Delete** → [■] → **Delete read** → [■] → **YES** → [■]

ⓘ Protected messages cannot be deleted.

### Delete All Delivery Reports

[Message List] window → [P] → **Delete** → [■] → **Delete all reports** → [■] → Enter Handset Code → [■] → **YES** → [■]

ⓘ Protected delivery reports cannot be deleted.

### Delete All Messages in Inbox/Outbox

[Folder List] window → [P] → **Delete all** → [■] → Enter Handset Code → [■] → **YES** → [■]

ⓘ Protected messages cannot be deleted.

### Delete Attached Files

[Message Details] window → [P] → **Delete att. file or Del all att. files** → [■] → **YES** → [■]





### Copy SMS Messages between Handset and USIM Card

**MENU** ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ **[ ]** ⇒ **USIM**  
**Operation** ⇒ **[ ]** ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒ **[ ]** ⇒ **Copy** ⇒ **[ ]** ⇒  
**Phone** → **USIM** or **USIM** → **Phone** ⇒  
**[ ]** ⇒ **SMS** ⇒ **[ ]** ⇒ **Inbox** or **Outbox** ⇒ **[ ]** ⇒ Select a folder ⇒  
**[ ]** ⇒ Select an SMS message ⇒ **[ ]** ⇒  
**[ ]** ⇒ **YES** ⇒ **[ ]**

### Delete SMS Messages on USIM Card

**MENU** ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ **[ ]** ⇒ **USIM**  
**Operation** ⇒ **[ ]** ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒ **[ ]** ⇒ **Delete** ⇒ **[ ]** ⇒  
**USIM** ⇒ **[ ]** ⇒ **SMS** ⇒ **[ ]** ⇒ **Inbox** or **Outbox** ⇒ **[ ]** ⇒ Select a folder ⇒  
**[ ]** ⇒ Select an SMS message ⇒ **[ ]** ⇒  
**[ ]** ⇒ **YES** ⇒ **[ ]**

### Change Message Color

**[Message List]** window ⇒ Select a message ⇒ Press and hold **[\*]**  
 Each time you press and hold **[\*]**, the message color toggles as follows: Red → Blue → Black

### Add a Folder

**[Folder List]** window ⇒ **[F]** ⇒ **Add folder** ⇒ **[ ]** ⇒ Enter folder name ⇒ **[ ]** ⇒ **YES** ⇒ **[ ]** ⇒ Make Auto Sort settings ⇒ **[ ]** ⇒ **YES** or **NO** ⇒ **[ ]**

Select **NO** and press **[ ]** when you do not want to make Auto Sort settings to the folder.

### Edit a Folder Name

**[Folder List]** window ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ **[F]** ⇒ **Edit folder name** ⇒ **[ ]** ⇒ Edit folder name ⇒ **[ ]**  
 Preinstalled folders cannot be renamed.

### Change Order of Folders

**[Folder List]** window ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ **[F]** ⇒ **Sort folder** ⇒ **[ ]** ⇒ Select a position ⇒ **[ ]**  
 You cannot change order of preinstalled folders.

### Delete a Folder

**[Folder List]** window ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ **[F]** ⇒ **Delete folder** ⇒ **[ ]** ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒ **[ ]** ⇒ **YES** ⇒ **[ ]**  
 Folders containing protected messages and preinstalled folders cannot be deleted.  
 This procedure also deletes messages stored in the folder.  
 Auto Sort settings are also canceled when you delete a folder with Auto Sort settings.





## Advanced Features

### Check Number of Saved Messages

[Folder List] window/ [Message List] window → [P] → **No. of messages** → [■]

👉 The total number of messages, and the number of unread and protected messages in a folder can be checked from Folder List window. The number of messages in a folder can be checked from Message List window.

### Check Sent/Received Addresses

Press and hold [□]/[□] → Select an entry → [■]

### Using Messages

#### Edit a Sent Message

[✉] → **Outbox** → [■] → Select a folder → [■] → Select a sent message → [P] → **Edit** → [■] → Edit address/subject/text → [✉]

### Edit & Send a Draft Message

[✉] → **Draft** → [■] → Select a message → [■] → Edit address/subject/text → [✉]

### Forward a Message

[Message Details] window → [P] → **Forward** → [■] → Enter address → [✉]

👉 The subject and text can also be edited.  
👉 Files attached to/inserted in S! Mails are also forwarded.

### Save Sender/Recipient's E-mail Address/Phone Number to Phone Book

[Message Details] window → [P] → **Save address** → [■] → **YES** → [■] → **Phone** or **USIM** → [■] → Select a saving option → [■] (→ Search Phone Book → Select an entry → [■]) → Edit each item → [✉]

👉 Select an address to save to Phone Book when the message has multiple recipients.

### Call a Phone Number in Text

[Message Details] window → Select a phone number → [■] → **Voice phone** or **Video Call** → [■] → **Dial** → [■]

### Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in Text

[Message Details] window → Select an e-mail address → [■] → Compose S! Mail → [✉]

### Access the Internet from a URL in Text

[Message Details] window → Select a URL → [■] → **YES** → [■]





### Save an E-mail Address/Phone Number in Text to Phone Book

[Message Details] window → Select an e-mail address/phone number → → **Add to phonebook** → → **YES** → → **Phone** or **USIM** → → Select a saving option → ( → Search Phone Book → Select an entry → ) → Edit each item →

### Search for Information by Keyword

[Message Details] window → → **Quick Search** → → **Enter keyword** → → Enter keyword → (twice) → Select an item from search results →   
 To select a keyword from previous entries, select **History**, press , select a keyword, and then press .

### Switch Subject Field Views

[Message List] window → Press and hold **#**   
 Each time you press and hold **#**, the subject field view toggles as follows: Subject → Name → Address

### Change Font Size of Text

[Message Details] window → Press and hold

### Search for Messages in a Folder

[Message List] window → → **Search mail** → → **Search sender, Search receiver or Search subject** → ( → Select a search criterion → ) → Select an address or enter address/subject →

You can narrow down search results by repeating the search operation.

### Sort Messages

[Message List] window → → **Sort** → → Select a criterion →

This procedure can be combined with the **Filter** operation below.

### Filter Messages

[Message List] window → → **Filter** → → Select a criterion →

This procedure can be combined with the **Sort** operation above.

### Reset Message List View to Default

[Message List] window → → **Display all** →

This procedure returns the message list view that has been changed by search, sort or filter operation to its original view.

### Switch All Unread Messages to Read Messages

[Message List] window → → **Read all** → → **YES** →

### Open S! Mail Delivery Report

[Message Details] window → → **Disp. report** →

This procedure is only available in Message Details window of a sent S! Mail.



# Internet



<b>Overview .....</b>	<b>6-2</b>	<b>Advanced Features .....</b>	<b>6-13</b>
<b>Yahoo! Keitai .....</b>	<b>6-3</b>	Connecting to the Internet .....	6-13
Connecting to Yahoo! Keitai .....	6-3	Page Operations .....	6-15
<b>PC Site Browser .....</b>	<b>6-5</b>	Bookmarks & Saved Pages .....	6-17
PC Site Browser Windows .....	6-5	S! Quick News .....	6-19
Connecting to PC Sites .....	6-6		
<b>Page Operations .....</b>	<b>6-8</b>		
Switching Pages .....	6-8		
Jumping to Next/Previous Page .....	6-8		
Selecting Links and Other Items .....	6-9		
<b>Bookmarks &amp; Saved Pages .....</b>	<b>6-10</b>		
Using Bookmarks .....	6-10		
Using Saved Pages .....	6-10		
<b>S! Quick News &amp; S! Loop</b>			
<b>(Japanese) .....</b>	<b>6-12</b>		
Using S! Quick News .....	6-12		
Using S! Loop .....	6-12		

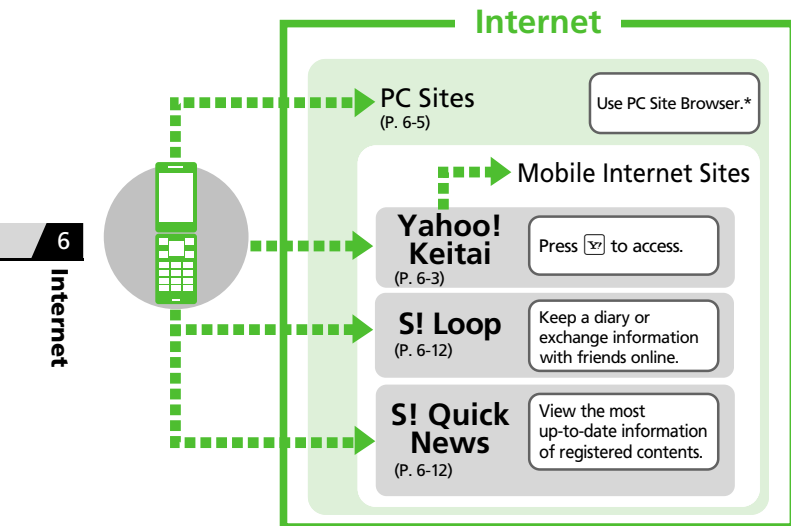
## 6





# Overview

Access the Mobile Internet via Yahoo! Keitai (SoftBank's mobile portal site). Browse PC sites using PC Site Browser.



## Transmission & Information Fees

Some web contents automatically connect to different pages incurring transmission fees.  
Information fees may also apply.

## About Security

Handset supports SSL/TLS (encryption protocols for Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information). Root certificates necessary to use SSL/TLS are saved on handset at the time of purchase.

- When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of SSL/TLS usage.  
SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp., VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., Entrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Japan Ltd. and Secom Trust Systems Co., Ltd. cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL/TLS.

\* When **Warning messages** is set to **ON**, an alert window opens each time handset connects to a website using PC Site Browser.





## Connecting to Yahoo! Keitai

1



Web Page

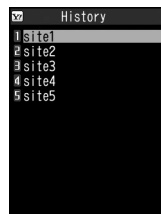
2 Select an item

Repeat this step until the page you want to view opens.

3 to exit the Internet   
YES

## Using Access History

1 Press and hold **History**



History List Window

2 Select a record

## Entering URLs

1 Press and hold **Enter URL**



Enter URL Window

2 **<NEW>** **Enter URL**  
 **OK**

### Tip

- A confirmation window for SSL/TLS communication appears each time a secure page is opened. appears in SSL/TLS compatible pages.
- Some pages require user authentication. Select text entry field and enter your user ID or password.





## More Features

### Advanced

#### Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

- Access Linked Pages by Opening New Windows
- Access New Pages by Opening New Windows

(▶ P. 6-13)

#### Yahoo! Keitai

- Switch to PC Site Browser
- Return to Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

(▶ P. 6-13)

#### Access History & URL History

- Save a URL in History to Bookmark
- Check a URL in History
- Delete Records in History

(▶ P. 6-14)

#### Entering URLs

- Access a Page from an Entered URL Record
- Access a Page by Editing an Entered URL Record
- Send an Entered URL Record by Mail
- Delete Entered URL Records

(▶ P. 6-14)

#### Root Certificates

- Check Certificate Details
- Switch a Certificate between Valid & Invalid

(▶ P. 6-14)



### Customize

#### Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

- Clear Cache
- Delete Cookies
- Initialize Memory Status of Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser
- Set Whether to Send Manufacture Number
- Set Whether to Send Referer
- Enable/Disable Cookies
- Set Whether to Activate Scripts
- Check Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser Settings
- Reset Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser Settings

(▶ P. 13-25)



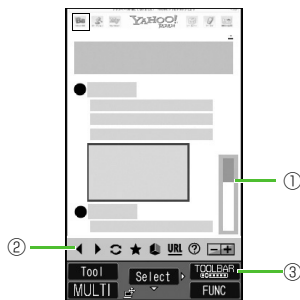


## PC Site Browser Windows

Two types of windows, **Viewer type** and **Standard type**, are available when using PC Site Browser.

### Viewer Window

PC site pages are laid out to fit the width of handset Display. Use the toolbar to zoom the desired area in/out, reload the page, or move to the previous/next pages.



Viewer Window

①	<b>View Position Bar</b> Indicates the current position in the page. Press  to open the function menu and select <b>View pos. display</b> to show the view position bar.
②	<b>Toolbar</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◀ Go back to the previous page (available for pages stored in the cache).</li> <li>▶ Go to the next page (available for pages stored in the cache).</li> <li>↻ Reload the current page.</li> <li>★ Open Bookmark Folder List window.</li> <li>📺 Toggle Original layout and Mobile layout.</li> <li><b>URL</b> Use  to select a link (URL) to access the page you want to view.</li> <li>❓ Show key guidance.</li> <li> Zoom the page in/out.</li> </ul>
③	<b>Operation Mode Switch</b> Press  to toggle between page operation and toolbar operation modes.

### Standard Window

PC site pages appear as it would on a PC screen. You can view the desired area by scrolling the page vertically and horizontally.



Standard Window

①	<b>Tab</b> Pages are indexed by title or URL.
②	<b>Page Switch</b> Press  to toggle pages.





## About Page Layout

When using PC Site Browser, two page layout types are available for each of Viewer and Standard windows:

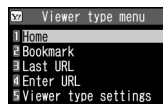
Original layout or Mobile layout is available for Viewer window; and PC screen or Small screen for Standard window.

Original layout/PC screen: Scroll pages vertically and horizontally.

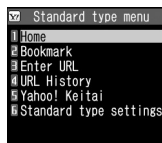
Mobile layout/Small screen: Scroll pages vertically only, as pages are laid out to fit the width of handset Display.

## Connecting to PC Sites

- 1 Press and hold ⇒ **PC Site Browser** ⇒ ⇒ **Viewer type** or **Standard type** ⇒



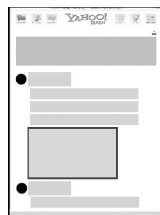
Viewer Type Menu Window



Standard Type Menu Window

- 2 **Home** ⇒ ⇒ **Select an item** ⇒

Repeat this step until the page you want to view opens.

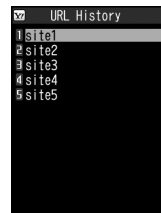


Web Page

- 3 to exit the Internet ⇒ **YES** ⇒

## Using URL History

- 1 [Standard Type Menu] window ⇒ **URL History** ⇒



URL History Window

- 2 Select a record ⇒





## Entering URLs

- 1 [Viewer Type Menu] window/[Standard Type Menu] window → **Enter URL** → ☐



Enter URL Window

- 2 <NEW> → ☐ → Enter URL  
→ ☐ → OK → ☐ (⇒ YES or NO → ☐)

## Accessing Last Connected Page

- 1 [Viewer Type Menu] window → **Last URL** → ☐  
⇒ YES → ☐ (⇒ YES or NO → ☐)

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

- Access Linked Pages by Opening New Windows
- Access New Pages by Opening New Windows

(▶ P. 6-13)

#### PC Site Browser

- Switch Page Layout Types
- Return to Home

(▶ P. 6-13)

#### Access History & URL History

- Save a URL in History to Bookmark
- Check a URL in History
- Delete Records in History

(▶ P. 6-14)

#### Entering URLs

- Access a Page from an Entered URL Record
- Access a Page by Editing an Entered URL Record
- Send an Entered URL Record by Mail
- Delete Entered URL Records

(▶ P. 6-14)

## Customize

#### Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

- Clear Cache
- Delete Cookies
- Initialize Memory Status of Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser
- Set Whether to Send Manufacture Number
- Set Whether to Send Referer
- Enable/Disable Cookies
- Set Whether to Activate Scripts
- Check Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser Settings
- Reset Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser Settings

(▶ P. 13-25)

#### PC Site Browser

- Do Not Show Alert When Activating PC Site Browser & Switching Browsers
- Reset Last URL




(▶ P. 13-27)







## Switching Pages


### Scrolling Pages

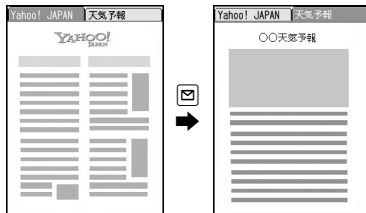
Scroll pages by using  to view areas not in Display. Press / to move pages up and down one length of Display when using PC Site Browser.

#### Tip



- Switch from the toolbar to page operation mode before scrolling pages in Viewer window of PC Site Browser (/ are available in toolbar operation mode).

## Switching Pages (Tabs)

In a Yahoo! Keitai window or Standard window of PC Site Browser, when more than one page is open, you can toggle pages by pressing .



## Jumping to Next/Previous Page

Once opened pages are stored in a temporary storage area (cache). Press , select **History back** or **History forward** and press  to go back to the previous page or proceed to the next page, without connecting to the network as long as the pages are stored in the cache.

● Network connection is made when the cache is full, or when opening a page that has been set to update its content each time it is opened.

## Viewing Frames

When a page is composed of multiple frames, you can select a frame to view.

1  to select a frame

2  ⇒ **Frame in** ⇒ 

Only the selected frame appears in Display. You can operate the frame as an ordinary web page.

■ **To Return to All-Frames View**

⇒  ⇒ **Frame Out** ⇒ 





## Selecting Links and Other Items

Operate as follows when buttons and menus appear in web pages.

①	<b>Link</b> Select a link and press  to access the linked page.
②	<b>Text Box</b> Select a text box and press  to open a text entry window to enter text.
③	<b>Pull-down Menu</b> Select a pull-down menu and press  to open a list of options. Use  to select an item and press .

④	<b>Radio Button</b> Use  and press  to select only one item from a range of options.  indicates the item is selected.
⑤	<b>Checkbox</b> Use  and press  to select multiple items from a range of options.  indicates the item is selected.
⑥	<b>Command Button</b> Select a command button and press  to activate the assigned function.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Page Operations

- Reload Page
- Save Images/Melodies in a Page
- Save Background Image of a Page
- Send URL of a Page by Mail
- Call a Phone Number in a Page
- Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in a Page
- Access Another Page from a URL in a Page
- Save a Phone Number/E-mail Address in a Page to Phone Book

- Close a Page When Multiple Windows are Open
- Search for Information by Keyword
- Change Font Size of a Page
- Zoom Page In/Out
- Jump to Top/End of a Page
- Change Character Code of a Page
- Play Flash® from the Beginning
- Check Title/URL/Certificate of a Page
- Show Key Guidance

▶ P. 6-15

### Customize

#### Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

- Set Scroll Unit/Speed
- Do Not Show/Download Images/Melodies

▶ P. 13-25

#### Yahoo! Keitai

- Set Font Size
- Set Flash® Sound On/Off

▶ P. 13-27

#### PC Site Browser

- Set Page Layout

▶ P. 13-27





## Using Bookmarks

Save URLs to Bookmark for quick access.

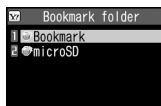
### Saving URLs to Bookmark

- 1 [Web Page] ⇒ ⇒ **Bookmark** ⇒ ⇒ **Add bookmark** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

- 2 Select a folder ⇒

### Accessing Pages from Bookmarks

- 1 Press and hold ⇒ **Bookmark** ⇒

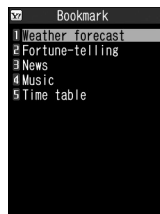


Bookmark Folder List Window

- To View Bookmarks of PC Site Browser

⇒ Press and hold ⇒ **PC Site Browser** ⇒ ⇒ **Viewer type or Standard type** ⇒ ⇒ **Bookmark** ⇒

- 2 Select a folder ⇒



Bookmark List Window

- 3 Select a bookmark ⇒

#### Tip

- To access a bookmarked page from another page:

⇒ **Bookmark** ⇒ ⇒ **Bookmark list** ⇒ ⇒ Select a bookmark ⇒

## Using Saved Pages

Save an open page to Saved Pages to view the page at a later time without connecting to the Internet.

- Only Yahoo! Keitai pages can be saved.

### Saving a Page

- 1 [Web Page] ⇒ ⇒ **Saved pages** ⇒ ⇒ **Add saved pages** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

### Opening Saved Pages

- 1 Press and hold ⇒ **Saved Pages** ⇒



Saved Pages List Window





### 2 Select a page →

#### Tip

- To open a saved page from another page:

⇒ *Saved pages* ⇒ ⇒ *Saved pages list* ⇒ ⇒ Select a page ⇒

### More Features

#### Advanced

##### Bookmarks

- Edit a Title
- Edit a URL
- Send a Bookmark by Mail
- Check Number of Bookmarks
- Create a Folder
- Edit a Folder Name
- Change Order of Folders
- Move Bookmarks to a Different Folder
- Delete a Folder
- Delete Bookmarks

(► P. 6-17)

##### Saved Pages

- Edit a Title
- Protect Saved Pages
- Check Number of Saved Pages
- Delete Saved Pages

(► P. 6-18)





## Using S! Quick News

Registered contents can be updated automatically and checked from Standby.

### Registering Contents

<Example> Register Contents on S! Quick News List

1 Press and hold ⇒ **S! Quick News** ⇒

2 **S! Quick News List** ⇒



S! Quick News List Window

3 **Add News** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

4 Select an item ⇒

Follow onscreen instructions.

## Checking Updated Information

1 [S! Quick News List] window  
⇒ Select an item ⇒

2 Select information ⇒   
■ To Check Next Updated Information  
⇒

## Using S! Loop

S! Loop is an online communication service. You can keep a diary and exchange information via BBS.

1 Press and hold ⇒ **S! Quick News** ⇒

2 **S! Loop List** ⇒ ⇒ Select an item ⇒

Follow onscreen instructions.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### S! Quick News

- Manually Update List
- Automatically Update List
- View Descriptions of Registered Contents
- Delete Registered Contents/Items

(▶ P. 6-19)

### Customize

#### S! Quick News

- Do Not Show S! Quick News in Standby
- Set Ticker Speed
- Set Which Information to Show in S! Quick News
- Do Not Show Images of S! Quick News
- Reset Registered Contents of S! Quick News

(▶ P. 13-28)





## Connecting to the Internet

### Start Here

[Web Page] ..... P. 6-3, P. 6-6  
 [History List] window..... P. 6-3  
 [URL History] window ..... P. 6-6  
 [Enter URL] window ..... P. 6-3, P. 6-7

### Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

#### Access Linked Pages by Opening New Windows

[Web Page] ⇒ Select a link ⇒

To close an open page, press , select **YES** and then press .

This procedure is unavailable in Viewer window of PC Site Browser.

#### Access New Pages by Opening New Windows

[Web Page] ⇒ ⇒ **Window operation** ⇒ ⇒ **Open new window** ⇒ ⇒ **Bookmark** or **Enter URL** ⇒ (⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ) ⇒ Select a bookmark or enter URL ⇒ (⇒ **OK** ⇒ )

To open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu, select **Open new window** and then **Yahoo! Keitai**, and press .

This procedure is unavailable in Viewer window of PC Site Browser.

### Yahoo! Keitai

#### Switch to PC Site Browser

[Web Page] ⇒ ⇒ **Switch to PC** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

Only Standard window opens when switching to PC Site Browser.

#### Return to Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

[Web Page] ⇒ ⇒ **Yahoo! Keitai** ⇒

### PC Site Browser

#### Switch Page Layout Types

[Web Page] ⇒ ⇒ **Change disp. mode** ⇒

The page layout toggles between PC screen and Small screen for Standard window, and Original layout and Mobile layout for Viewer window.

#### Return to Home

[Web Page] ⇒ ⇒ **Home** ⇒





### Access History & URL History

#### Save a URL in History to Bookmark

[History List] window/ [URL History] window → Select a record → → **Add bookmark** → → **YES** → → Select a folder →

#### Check a URL in History

[History List] window/ [URL History] window → Select a record → → **URL** →

#### Delete Records in History

[History List] window/ [URL History] window → Select a record → → **Delete** → → **Delete this, Delete selected or Delete all** → (→ Select records → → or enter Handset Code → ) → **YES** →

### Entering URLs

#### Access a Page from an Entered URL Record

[Enter URL] window → Select a record → → **OK** →

#### Access a Page by Editing an Entered URL Record

[Enter URL] window → Select a record → → Select URL entry field → → Edit URL → → **OK** →

#### Send an Entered URL Record by Mail

[Enter URL] window → Select a record → → **Compose message** → → Enter address/subject/text →

Composition (S! Mail) window opens with the URL inserted in the text.

This procedure is unavailable in Viewer window of PC Site Browser.

### Delete Entered URL Records

[Enter URL] window → Select a record → (→ **Delete** → ) → **Delete this, Delete selected or Delete all** → (→ Select records → → or enter Handset Code → ) → **YES** →

### Root Certificates

#### Check Certificate Details

→ **Settings** → → **Connection Settings** → → **Certificate** → → Select a certificate →





### Switch a Certificate between Valid & Invalid

⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Connection Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Certificate** ⇒ ⇒ Select a certificate ⇒ ⇒ **Valid/Invalid** ⇒

This procedure switches a valid certificate to invalid and an invalid one to valid.

## Page Operations

### Start Here

[Web Page] ..... P. 6-3, P. 6-6

#### Reload Page

[Web Page] ⇒ ⇒ **Reload** ⇒

### Save Images/Melodies in a Page

[Web Page] ⇒ ⇒ **Save file** ⇒ ⇒ Select a file ⇒ ⇒ **Save** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒ (⇒ **YES** or **NO** ⇒ )

To play a melody, select **Play** and press .

To check file properties, select **Property** and press .

This procedure is unavailable in Viewer window of PC Site Browser.

### Save Background Image of a Page

[Web Page] ⇒ ⇒ **Save file** ⇒ (⇒ **Background image** ⇒ ) ⇒ **Save** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒ (⇒ **YES** or **NO** ⇒ )

To check file properties, select **Property** and press .

This procedure is unavailable in Viewer window of PC Site Browser.

### Send URL of a Page by Mail

[Web Page] ⇒ ⇒ **Convenient tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Compose message** ⇒ ⇒ **Attach URL** ⇒ ⇒ Enter address/subject/text ⇒

Composition (S! Mail) window opens with the URL inserted in the text.

This procedure is unavailable in Viewer window of PC Site Browser.

### Call a Phone Number in a Page

[Web Page] ⇒ Select a phone number ⇒ ⇒ **Voice phone** or **TV Call** ⇒ ⇒ **Dial** ⇒

### Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in a Page

[Web Page] ⇒ Select an e-mail address ⇒ ⇒ **Compose S! Mail** ⇒

This procedure is unavailable in Viewer window of PC Site Browser.





### Access Another Page from a URL in a Page

[Web Page] ⇒ Select a URL ⇒

### Save a Phone Number/E-mail Address in a Page to Phone Book

[Web Page] ⇒ Select a phone number/e-mail address ⇒ ⇒ **Add to phonebook** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ⇒ **Phone** or **USIM** ⇒ ⇒ Select a saving option ⇒ ⇒ Edit each item ⇒

This procedure is unavailable in Viewer window of PC Site Browser.

### Close a Page When Multiple Windows are Open

[Web Page] ⇒ ⇒ **Window operation** ⇒ ⇒ **Close window** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

### Search for Information by Keyword

[Web Page] ⇒ ⇒ **Quick search** ⇒ ⇒ **Enter keyword** ⇒ ⇒ Enter keyword ⇒ ⇒ **Search** ⇒ ⇒ Select an item from search results ⇒

To select a keyword from previous entries, select **History**, press , select a keyword, and then press .

This procedure is unavailable in Viewer window of PC Site Browser.

### Change Font Size of a Page

[Web Page] ⇒ ⇒ **Change font size** ⇒ ⇒ Select a font size ⇒

This procedure is only available when the page layout type is **Small screen** in Standard window of PC Site Browser.

### Zoom Page In/Out

- In Standard Window

[Web Page] ⇒ ⇒ **Zoom** ⇒ ⇒ Select a magnification ⇒

- In Viewer Window

[Web Page] ⇒ ⇒ **Zoom** ⇒ ⇒ **Zoom in** or **Zoom out** ⇒

This procedure is only available when using PC Site Browser.

### Jump to Top/End of a Page

[Web Page] ⇒ ⇒ **Convenient tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Head of sentence** or **End of sentence** ⇒

This procedure is unavailable in Viewer window of PC Site Browser.

### Change Character Code of a Page

[Web Page] ⇒ ⇒ **Convenient tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Change CHR code** ⇒ ⇒ Select a character code ⇒

Use this procedure when characters of a page are illegible.





### Play Flash® from the Beginning

[Web Page] ⇒ ⇒ **Convenient tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Replay** ⇒

### Check Title/URL/Certificate of a Page

[Web Page] ⇒ ⇒ **Convenient tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Site info** ⇒ ⇒ **Title, URL or Certificate** ⇒

### Show Key Guidance

[Web Page] ⇒ ⇒ **Help** ⇒

This procedure is only available when using PC Site Browser.

## Bookmarks & Saved Pages

### Start Here

[Bookmark Folder List] window ..... P. 6-10  
 [Bookmark List] window ..... P. 6-10  
 [Saved Pages List] window ..... P. 6-10

### Bookmarks

#### Edit a Title

[Bookmark List] window ⇒ Select a bookmark ⇒ ⇒ **Edit title** ⇒ ⇒ Edit title ⇒

#### Edit a URL

[Bookmark List] window ⇒ Select a bookmark ⇒ ⇒ **Edit URL** ⇒ ⇒ Edit URL ⇒

This procedure is unavailable in Viewer window of PC Site Browser.

### Send a Bookmark by Mail

[Bookmark List] window ⇒ Select a bookmark ⇒ ⇒ **Compose message** or **Attach to mail** ⇒ ⇒ Enter address/subject/text ⇒

**Compose message:** Composition (S! Mail) window opens with the URL inserted at the top of the text.  
**Attach to mail:** Composition (S! Mail) window opens with the bookmark file attached.

This procedure is unavailable in Viewer window of PC Site Browser.

### Check Number of Bookmarks

[Bookmark Folder List] window/  
 [Bookmark List] window ⇒ ⇒ **No. of bookmarks** ⇒

The total number of bookmarks can be checked from Bookmark Folder List window; and the number of bookmarks in a folder can be checked from Bookmark List window.





## Create a Folder

[Bookmark Folder List] window →  
 → **Add folder** →  → Enter  
 folder name →

## Edit a Folder Name

[Bookmark Folder List] window →  
 Select a folder →  → **Edit folder  
 name** →  → Edit folder name  
 →

## Change Order of Folders

[Bookmark Folder List] window →  
 Select a folder →  → **Sort folder**  
 →  → Select a position →

## Move Bookmarks to a Different Folder

[Bookmark List] window → Select  
 a bookmark →  → **Move** →   
 → **Move this, Move selected** or  
**Move all** →  → Select a  
 destination folder →  (→ Select  
 bookmarks →  → ) → **YES** →

## Delete a Folder

[Bookmark Folder List] window →  
 Select a folder →  → **Delete  
 folder** →  → Enter Handset  
 Code →  → **YES** →

This procedure also deletes all the  
 bookmarks saved in the folder.

## Delete Bookmarks

- To Delete All Bookmarks

[Bookmark Folder List] window →  
 → **Delete all** →  → Enter  
 Handset Code →  → **YES** →

- To Delete Bookmarks in a Folder

[Bookmark List] window → Select  
 a bookmark →  → **Delete** →   
 → **Delete this, Delete selected** or  
**Delete all** →  (→ Select  
 bookmarks →  → ) or enter  
 Handset Code → ) → **YES** →

## Saved Pages

### Edit a Title

[Saved Pages List] window →  
 Select a saved page →  → **Edit  
 title** →  → Edit title →





### Protect Saved Pages

[Saved Pages List] window →

Select a saved page → →

**Protect ON/OFF** →

Use this procedure to toggle saved pages between protected and unprotected.

### Check Number of Saved Pages

[Saved Pages List] window →

→ **No. of pages** →

### Delete Saved Pages

[Saved Pages List] window →

Select a saved page → →

**Delete** → → **Delete this, Delete**

**selected** or **Delete all** → (→

Select saved pages → → or

enter Handset Code → → **YES**

→

## S! Quick News

### Start Here

[S! Quick News List] window... P. 6-12

### Manually Update List

[S! Quick News List] window →

Select an item → → **Refresh**

**this** or **Refresh all** → → **YES** →

### Automatically Update List

Press and hold → **S! Quick**

**News** → → **Settings** → →

**Auto Refresh** → → Select an

item → → Select an interval,

**ON** or **OFF** →

### View Descriptions of Registered Contents

[S! Quick News List] window →

Select an item → → **Outline** →

### Delete Registered Contents/Items

[S! Quick News List] window →

Select an item → → **Delete this**

or **Delete all** → → **YES** (→

(twice) → Enter Handset Code →

→







# Camera



<b>Overview</b> .....	<b>7-2</b>
Viewfinder Indicators .....	7-3
<b>Capturing Still Images</b> .....	<b>7-4</b>
Capturing Still Images.....	7-4
<b>Recording Videos</b> .....	<b>7-5</b>
Recording Videos .....	7-5
Chance Capture.....	7-5
Recording Only Sound .....	7-6
<b>Various Camera Features</b> .....	<b>7-7</b>
Continuous Shooting .....	7-7
Add Frames to Images .....	7-7
Auto Timer .....	7-8
<b>Advanced Features</b> .....	<b>7-9</b>
Shooting Still Images/Videos.....	7-9
Using Still Images/Videos.....	7-9
After Continuous Shooting .....	7-10
After Shooting Framed Images.....	7-10

# 7





Capture still images and record videos with handset camera.

## Shoot Still Images/Videos

### Wide Range of Image Sizes

Select image size accordingly. Use small sizes for S! Mail attachments and larger sizes for saving high resolution images (P. 7-9).

### Photo Mode Selection

Select a mode suited to the subject/scene from Portrait, Scenery, Close-up, Sports mode and others. (P. 7-9).

### Various Camera Features

Among features included are shooting with Auto Timer, continuous shooting and shooting framed images (P. 7-7, P. 7-8).

### Chance Capture

Record videos even when recording time is over (P. 7-5).

\* Recorded videos are saved only for the available recording time from the end of recording.

Send by S! Mail

Non-SoftBank  
Mobile Phones

SoftBank  
Handsets

PCs

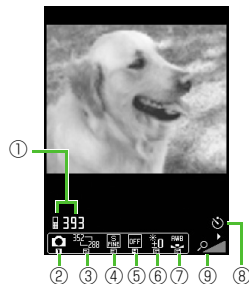
- Still images are saved in JPEG format and videos in MPEG4 format.
- Clean the lens with soft cloth. Fingerprints or grime on the lens may result in blurred images.
- Be careful not to jiggle your hands to prevent blurring of images. Hold handset firmly, or place it on a stable surface and use Auto Timer.
- Although the camera is made with high-precision technology, some pixels may appear brighter and some darker.
- Shooting or saving images when handset is warm may affect image quality.
- Exposing the lens to direct sunlight for an extended period may result in discoloration of photo images.
- Shutter click and Auto Timer tone sound at a fixed volume even in Manner Mode.



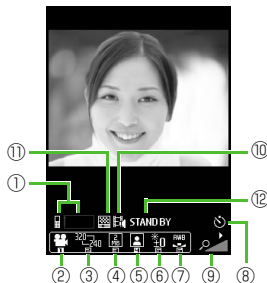


## Viewfinder Indicators

Photo Viewfinder



Video Viewfinder



①	<b>Storage Location (Still Image)</b> Handset  Memory Card <b>Number of Files That can be Saved (Still Image)</b> White number: 11 or more Yellow number: 10 or less Red number: No memory space
	<b>Storage Location (Video)</b> Handset  Memory Card <b>Storage Capacity (Video)</b> Blue: 500 KB or more Yellow: Less than 500 KB Red: No memory space
②	<b>Camera Mode</b> Movie Mode Chance Capture Photo Mode Auto Continuous Shooting Manual Continuous Shooting Voice Mode
③	<b>Image Size (Still Image/Video)</b> 2M (1200 × 1600) to Sub QCIF (128 × 96) QVGA (320 × 240) to Sub QCIF (128 × 96)
④	<b>Image Quality (Still Image)</b> Super Fine  Normal Fine

	<b>File Size (Video)</b> Mail attachment  Long time Up to 2 MB
⑤	<b>Photo Mode</b> Auto  Sports mode Portrait  Night mode Scenery  OFF Close-up
⑥	<b>Brightness</b> +2 to  -2
⑦	<b>White Balance</b> Auto  Light bulb Fine  Fluorescent lamp Cloudy
⑧	<b>Auto Timer</b> Auto Timer set
⑨	<b>Zoom (16 steps)</b> Minimum to  Maximum
⑩	<b>Recording Type (Video)</b> Normal (Video & Sound) Video only  Sound only
⑪	<b>Image Quality (Video)</b> Long time  Fine Normal  Super Fine
⑫	<b>Recording Status (Video)</b> STANDBY Recording ready RECORDING Recording





# Capturing Still Images

Capture still images to send as S! Mail attachments, use as wallpaper, etc.

- Captured images are saved to My Picture in Data Folder.

## Capturing Still Images

1 ⇒ **Camera** ⇒ ⇒ **Photo mode** ⇒



Photo Viewfinder

2 **Frame image in Viewfinder** ⇒



Photo Preview Window

■ **To Discard the Shot Image and Return to Viewfinder**

⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

3

## Available Functions

Zoom (Telescopic)	
Zoom (Wide angle)	
Key Guidance	

**More Features**

**Advanced**

Shooting Still Images

- Switch Camera Modes
- Select Image Size

- Select Photo Mode
- Adjust Brightness
- Switch Color Modes
- Check Storage Capacity

(▶ P. 7-9)

Using Still Images

- Send Captured Still Image by Mail
- Open Saved Files
- Show Mirror Image of Shot Still Image
- Save Mirror Image of Shot Still Image
- Show Shot Still Image in Standby

(▶ P. 7-9)

**Customize**

Camera Settings

- Set Image Quality
- Set White Balance
- Reduce Flicker
- Set Shutter Sound

(▶ P. 13-33)

File Storage

- Set Storage Location for Shot Still Images
- Save Shot Still Images Automatically

(▶ P. 13-34)





# Recording Videos

Record videos with or without sound, or record sound only.

- Recorded videos are saved to Videos in Data Folder.

## Recording Videos

- 1 → **Camera** → → **Movie mode** →



Video Viewfinder

- 2 **Frame image in Viewfinder** →

Recording starts.

3



Video Preview Window

Recording ends.

- **To Play the Recording**



- **To Discard the Recording and Return to Viewfinder**



4

## Available Functions

Zoom (Telescopic)	
Zoom (Wide angle)	

### Tip

- Key operation tones may be recorded if you adjust zoom, etc. while recording a video.

## Chance Capture

Continue recording a video until you shoot the desired scene even when the available recording time is over.

- 1 **[Video Viewfinder]** → →

- 2 **Frame image in Viewfinder** →

Recording starts.

When the available recording time is over, the remaining time indication flashes.

- 3 (twice)

### Note

- When recorded video exceeds available memory, handset saves the maximum recordable time from the end of recording. Initial portion is deleted.

7

Camera





## Recording Only Sound

Record only audio in Movie Mode.  
(Voice Mode)

**1** [Video Viewfinder] ⇨ **1** ⇨



**2**

Recording starts.

**3** (twice)

### Tip

- To activate Voice Mode from Main Menu:

⇨ *Camera* ⇨ ⇨ *Voice mode*  
⇨

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Shooting Videos

- Switch Camera Modes
- Select Image Size
- Select Photo Mode
- Adjust Brightness
- Switch Color Modes
- Check Storage Capacity
- Change Recording Type

(▶ P. 7-9)

#### Using Videos

- Send Recorded Video by Mail
- Open Saved Files
- Show Recorded Video in Standby
- Edit Title of Video

(▶ P. 7-9)

### Customize

#### Video Settings

- Set Image Quality
- Set File Size
- Set White Balance
- Reduce Flicker
- Set Shutter Sound

(▶ P. 13-33)

#### File Storage

- Set Storage Location for Shot Videos
- Save Shot Videos Automatically

(▶ P. 13-34)





## Continuous Shooting

Shoot up to 20 still images continuously.

Automatic continuous shooting mode: Automatically shoots a set number of images at set intervals after you release the shutter.

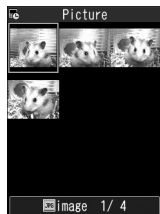
Manual continuous shooting mode: Shoots a set number of images, each of which is shot by releasing the shutter manually.

- 1 [Photo Viewfinder] ⇒ ⇒ or ⇒



Continuous Shooting Viewfinder (Manual)

- 2 Frame image in Viewfinder ⇒



Thumbnail Preview Window

### ■ To Stop Continuous Shooting

In Automatic Mode:

⇒ ⇒ **NO** ⇒

In Manual Mode:

⇒

### ■ To Discard Shot Images and Return to Viewfinder

⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

- 3 Press and hold ⇒ **Save** or **Mirror save** ⇒

## Add Frames to Images

- 1 [Photo Viewfinder] ⇒ ⇒ **Select frame** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a folder** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a frame** ⇒

- 2 Compose image in the frame ⇒

- 3





### Auto Timer

- Auto Timer returns to OFF after shooting.

**1** [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇒ ⇒ **Auto timer** ⇒

**2** **ON** ⇒ ⇒ Enter time ⇒

**3** Frame image in Viewfinder  
⇒

Auto Timer starts countdown, and Camera Indicator flashes green. About five seconds before shooting, a countdown tone starts playing and Camera Indicator flashes rapidly.

**4**

■ **To Stop Auto Timer**

⇒ /[CLR]

#### Tip

- To shoot manually during Auto Timer countdown, press .

### More Features

#### Advanced

#### After Continuous Shooting

- View Images
- Save Only One Frame
- Save Only Selected Images
- Save as an Animation

(▶ P. 7-10)

#### After Shooting Framed Images

- Change Frame before Saving Image

(▶ P. 7-10)

#### Customize

#### Continuous Shooting

- Set Interval & Number of Shots for Continuous Shooting

(▶ P. 13-34)





## Shooting Still Images/Videos

### Start Here

[Photo Viewfinder] ..... P. 7-4

[Video Viewfinder] ..... P. 7-5

### Switch Camera Modes

[Photo Viewfinder] / [Video Viewfinder] ⇒ ⇒ Select a Camera Mode ⇒

### Select Image Size

[Photo Viewfinder] / [Video Viewfinder] ⇒ ⇒ Select an image size ⇒

### Select Photo Mode

[Photo Viewfinder] / [Video Viewfinder] ⇒ ⇒ Select a Photo Mode ⇒

### Adjust Brightness

[Photo Viewfinder] / [Video Viewfinder] ⇒ ⇒ Select a brightness level ⇒

### Switch Color Modes

[Photo Viewfinder] / [Video Viewfinder] ⇒ ⇒ **Camera Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Color mode set** ⇒ ⇒ **Normal, Sepia** or **Monochrome** ⇒

### Check Storage Capacity

[Photo Viewfinder] / [Video Viewfinder] ⇒ ⇒ **Memory info** ⇒

### Change Recording Type

[Video Viewfinder] ⇒ ⇒ **Movie type set** ⇒ ⇒ **Normal, Video** or **Voice** ⇒

## Using Still Images/Videos

### Start Here

[Photo Preview] window ..... P. 7-4

[Video Preview] window ..... P. 7-5

### Send Captured Still Image by Mail

[Photo Preview] window ⇒ ⇒ **Attach image** ⇒ ⇒ **Attach mail** or **QVGA scale down** ⇒ ⇒ Compose and send S! Mail

- To Paste Captured Still Image in Message Text  
⇒ **Insert image** ⇒ ⇒ **Insert mail** or **SubQCIF scale down** ⇒ ⇒ Compose and send S! Mail

### Send Recorded Video by Mail

[Video Preview] window ⇒ ⇒ Compose and send S! Mail

### Open Saved Files

⇒ **Camera** ⇒ ⇒ **My Picture** or **Videos** ⇒ ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ⇒ Select a file ⇒

See P. 9-3 for video playback window and P. 9-4 for available keys during playback.





## Show Mirror Image of Shot Still Image

[Photo Preview] window ⇒ ⇒  
**Mirror display** ⇒

## Save Mirror Image of Shot Still Image

[Photo Preview] window ⇒ ⇒  
**Mirror save** ⇒

## Show Shot Still Image in Standby

[Photo Preview] window ⇒ ⇒  
**Set as display** ⇒ ⇒ **Stand-by display** ⇒ ⇒ Select a layout ⇒  
 ⇒ Check preview ⇒

## Show Recorded Video in Standby

[Video Preview] window ⇒ ⇒  
**Set as stand-by** ⇒

## Edit Title of Video

[Video Preview] window ⇒ ⇒  
**Edit title** ⇒ ⇒ Edit title ⇒

## After Continuous Shooting

### Start Here

[Thumbnail Preview] window ... P. 7-7

### View Images

[Thumbnail Preview] window ⇒  
Select an image ⇒

Press to switch to the previous/next image.

### Save Only One Frame

[Thumbnail Preview] window ⇒  
Select an image ⇒ ⇒

### Save Only Selected Images

[Thumbnail Preview] window ⇒  
Select an image ⇒ ⇒ Repeat  
the same step ⇒ ⇒ **Save** or  
**Mirror save** ⇒

Select a checked image and press to cancel the selection.

## Save as an Animation

[Thumbnail Preview] window ⇒  
 ⇒ **Store all&anime** ⇒ ⇒  
**Save** or **Mirror save** ⇒ ⇒ Select  
a destination ⇒

## After Shooting Framed Images

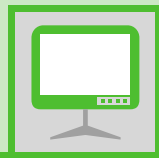
### Start Here

[Photo Preview] window ..... P. 7-4

### Change Frame before Saving Image

[Photo Preview] window ⇒ ⇒  
**Change frame** ⇒ ⇒ Select a  
frame ⇒





<b>About TV .....</b>	<b>8-2</b>
TV Windows .....	8-3
<b>Initial Setup.....</b>	<b>8-4</b>
<b>Watching TV .....</b>	<b>8-5</b>
Data Broadcasts (Japanese) .....	8-5
Program Guide .....	8-6
<b>Recording/Playing Programs .....</b>	<b>8-7</b>
Recording Programs.....	8-7
Playing Programs .....	8-7
<b>View/Record Timer.....</b>	<b>8-9</b>
Setting View Timer .....	8-9
Setting Record Timer .....	8-9
<b>Advanced Features.....</b>	<b>8-11</b>
Channel Settings .....	8-11
Watching TV.....	8-11
Data Broadcasts.....	8-12
TV Link .....	8-12
Recording Programs.....	8-13
Playing Programs .....	8-13
View/Record Timer.....	8-13





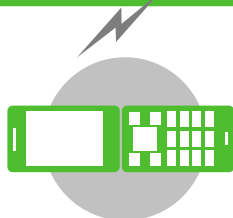
## About TV

Handset supports One Seg Digital TV for cellular phones and other information terminals.

- One Seg is available only in Japan. Because other countries use different broadcast systems and frequencies, watching One Seg Digital TV is not possible outside of Japan.

### One Seg

One Seg is a digital TV broadcasting service for mobile devices. It uses one segment of the terrestrial digital band to allow you to watch TV and data broadcasts that you enjoy at home, on your handset.



**Watch TV in Widescreen**

### Data Broadcasts

Enjoy data broadcasts while watching TV. Access program-related information and even participate in the program (P. 8-5).

### Record Programs

Record a program on memory card while viewing it and enjoy it again at a later time (P. 8-7).

### View/Record Timer

Book programs you want to view/record. Program Guide can be used for booking programs (P. 8-9).

### Quick Info

Senders and subjects of incoming messages can be checked while watching TV (P. 13-6).

## Precautions

- Never watch TV while riding a bicycle, motorcycle, or driving a car. You may not hear the sounds around you clearly, or TV image/sound may distract you creating the risk of accident. Even while walking, pay attention to the traffic around you. Be especially careful at railway crossings and pedestrian crosswalks.
- TV image/sound may be affected if a call or message is received while watching TV.
- TV information (TV links or data you entered in Data Broadcast Mode) saved on handset cannot be transferred to another handset when you change your handset to another model or when it is repaired. Keep a memo of necessary information.
- You cannot use TV if USIM Card is not inserted in handset or if your contract with SoftBank has expired.
- Handset has a built-in TV Antenna. Change the orientation of handset, keep it away from/close to your body or move to a different place to improve signal reception. Keep handset open while watching TV.





- TV image/sound may deteriorate or signal reception may become impossible in the following areas:
  - Areas far from signal towers
  - Mountain areas or places beside tall buildings
  - In tunnels, underground malls or buildings with a lot of signal obstructions
- For more information on One Seg services, visit the following website:  
The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting  
From PC: <http://www.dpa.or.jp/>  
From handset: <http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/> (Japanese)

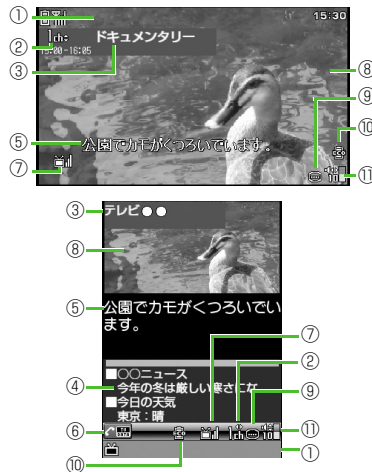
## When You First Activate TV

A confirmation window about operations in Landscape view (widescreen mode) appears. Read through the content, press ☐, select **YES**, and then press ☐. If you select **NO**, this window no longer appears from the next time.

## When a Call Arrives While Using TV

When a call arrives or when the alarm or schedule alarm is activated while using TV, TV is interrupted to receive the call, etc. TV resumes after the interrupting function ends.

## TV Windows



①	Quick Info Information about messages received while watching TV is shown in tickers.
②	Channel (Remote Control No.)
③	Program Title
④	Data Broadcast
⑤	Subtitles
⑥	TV View Mode Image Mode Data Broadcast Mode
⑦	Signal Strength Strong Moderate Weak Out of Broadcasting Area
⑧	Image
⑨	Receiving Subtitle Information Subtitles Available
⑩	Eco Mode Eco Mode Active
⑪	Volume





# Initial Setup

Configure channel settings for your area and save stations to a channel list.

1 ⇒ **TV** ⇒ ⇒ **Channel Settings** ⇒

2 **Select area** ⇒ ⇒ **Select area** ⇒ ⇒ **Select prefecture** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

Stations for the area are saved to a channel list.

## Tip

- If signals from stations of the selected area are difficult to receive, search for stations using the *Automatic* option.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Channel Settings

- Save Stations to a Channel List Automatically
- Save Stations of a Different Area to a Channel List
- Switch Channel Lists

(▶ P. 8-11)

### Customize

#### Channel List

- Change Title of Channel List
- Delete a Channel List
- Assign Channels to Remote Control Numbers
- Delete a Channel

(▶ P. 13-29)

#### Other Settings

- Reset Channel Settings

(▶ P. 13-32)





# Watching TV

- 1 → **TV** → → **Watch TV**  
→



TV Window

## 2 Use Keypad to select a channel

Press for channel 10, for channel 11, and for channel 12.

■ **To Change Next/Previous Channel**  
→

■ **To Automatically Search for Receivable Stations**

→ Press and hold

Press or to stop station search.

- 3 to end TV → to select **YES** →

- Follow the same step to end TV in Portrait view.
- Alternatively, press and hold to end TV.

## Available Functions

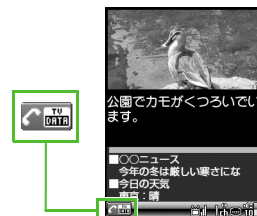
Adjust Volume	or
Mute	
Toggle Portrait/Landscape	or press and hold
Toggle Windows*	Press and hold Windows toggle as follows: Data Broadcast → Image & Data Broadcast → Image & Subtitles & Data Broadcast

\* Available while watching TV in Portrait view (in Data Broadcast Mode)

## Data Broadcasts (Japanese)

Data broadcasts are available while watching TV in Portrait view. Access various kinds of program-related and other information in Data Broadcast Mode.

- 1 [TV] window →



Data Broadcast Mode Window

Data Broadcast Mode is activated. Access the Internet from a link to view pages relating to the current program.

■ **To Return to Image Mode**

→





## Available Functions

Select a Link	
Confirm Selection of a Link	
Switch Pages	
Toggle Windows	Press and hold  Windows toggle as follows: Data Broadcast → Image & Data Broadcast → Image & Subtitles & Data Broadcast

### Note

- Viewing data broadcast information requires no fees. However, accessing Internet links will incur transmission fees.
- Data broadcasts are unavailable in Landscape view.

## Program Guide

- Use Program Guide to set timer to record/activate programs.
- Activate TV from Program Guide.
- Before first using Program Guide, configure initial settings and agree to the terms of use.

1 ⇒ **TV** ⇒ ⇒ **Program**

**Guide** ⇒

See Program Guide help for further operations.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Watching TV

- Show Program Information
- Adjust Brightness
- Switch Main & Sub Audio
- Switch Audio Channels
- Show Current Channel List Information
- Add Current Station to Channel List
- Select a Program

(▶ P. 8-11)

#### Data Broadcasts

- Reload Page Accessed from Data Broadcast
- Check Certificate for SSL Page
- Exit Page and Return to Data Broadcast

(▶ P. 8-12)

#### TV Link

- Save TV Links
- Access Pages/Information from TV Links

- Show Details of a TV Link
- Show Number of Saved TV Links
- Delete TV Links

(▶ P. 8-12)

### Customize

#### Image & Sound

- Set Subtitle Display
- Show/Hide Icons in Landscape View
- Save Battery by Dimming Backlight
- Keep Backlight Lighted While Watching TV
- Set Time Backlight Stays Lit While Watching TV
- Listen to Sound While Handset is Closed

(▶ P. 13-30)

#### Data Broadcasts

- Set Whether to Show Images in Pages Accessed from Data Broadcasts
- Enable/Disable Sound Effects of Data Broadcasts
- Set Whether or Not to Show Confirmation Window Again

(▶ P. 13-31)





## Recording Programs

TV programs can be recorded on memory card while you are watching them.

- Data broadcasts are not saved with recording.

### 1 [TV] window → Press and hold

Recording starts.

#### ■ To Capture a Still Image



Captured still images are saved to TV folder in Data Folder.

### 2

Recording ends.

#### ■ When Memory Becomes Full

Recording ends and the recorded portion is saved.

### Note

- Channels cannot be changed during recording.
- Recording certain programs is restricted. If a restriction is activated while recording a program, recording automatically ends, and the part that has been recorded so far is saved.
- When appears to indicate handset is out of the broadcasting area, recording is paused. When the signal strength recovers to weak or better, recording automatically resumes.
- Recordings that you make are for personal use only. Other uses require the permission of the copyright holder.

## Playing Programs

### 1 → **Data Folder** → → **TV** →

### 2 **Video** → → **microSD** →



Recorded Program List Window

#### ■ To View Captured Still Images

→ **Image** → → Select a folder →





## 3 Select a file ⇒



Recorded Program Playback Window

### ■ To Stop Playback



CLR

### Tip

- If a program was stopped partway through, resume playback from that point. Select **YES** and press .

## Available Keys during Program Playback

Pause/Play	
Adjust Volume	or
Mute	
Fast Play	
Frame Forward	during pause
Skip by 30 Seconds	Press and hold

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Recording Programs

- Edit Title of a Recorded Program
- Reset Title of a Recorded Program
- Switch Views of Recorded Program List Window
- Check Information on a Recorded Program
- Check Volume of Recorded Programs
- Delete Recorded Programs

(▶ P. 8-13)

#### Playing Programs

- Specify Point to Start Playback

(▶ P. 8-13)

### Customize

#### Recording Programs

- Continue/End Recording at Low Battery

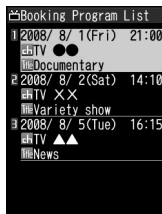
(▶ P. 13-31)





## Setting View Timer

- 1 ⇒ **TV** ⇒ ⇒ **Booking**  
**Program List** ⇒



Booking Program List Window

- 2 ⇒ **New** ⇒



View Timer Setting Window

- 3 ⇒ ⇒ **Enter date** ⇒   
⇒ Enter date and time ⇒

■ To Select a Date from Calendar  
⇒ Choose date ⇒ ⇒ Select a date ⇒ ⇒ Enter time ⇒

- 4 ⇒ ⇒ **Select a channel**  
⇒

- 5 ⇒ ⇒ **ON, ON/Set time**  
**or OFF** ⇒ ( ⇒ Select a time ⇒ )

- 6

## Setting Record Timer

- 1 ⇒ **TV** ⇒ ⇒ **Timer**  
**Recording List** ⇒



Timer Recording List Window

- 2 ⇒ **New** ⇒



Record Timer Setting Window





**3** ⇒ ⇒ **Enter date** ⇒ ⇒ Enter date and time to start recording ⇒

**4** ⇒ ⇒ **Enter date** ⇒ ⇒ Enter date and time to end recording ⇒

■ **To Select a Date from Calendar**  
⇒ **Choose date** ⇒ ⇒ Select a date ⇒ ⇒ Enter time ⇒

**5** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a channel** ⇒

**6** ⇒ ⇒ **ON or OFF** ⇒

**7** (⇒ **YES or YES (confirm once)** ⇒ )

## When the Set Time Comes

View Timer:

The alarm sounds for about five minutes, and the start date and time, channel, program title and animation appear in Display. Press any key to stop the alarm tone.

Record Timer:

One minute before the recording start time, the alarm sounds for about two seconds. After the start date and time, end date and time, channel, program title and animation appear in Display, TV window opens. Then, recording starts at the set start time.

### Note

- The record timer cannot be set to start recording in one minute, as handset starts preparing for recording one minute before the recording start time.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### View/Record Timer

- Select a Timer Alarm Tone
- Enter Title of Booked Program
- Set Regular Activation of View/Record Timer
- Set Timer Alarm Volume
- Activate TV Directly from Timer Alarm Notification Window
- Set Priority at Recording Start Time When a TV & Music Group Function is Active
- Edit View/Record Timer Settings
- Change Order of Booked Programs
- Delete Booked Programs
- Check Volume of Recorded Programs
- Check Result of Timer Recording

(► P. 8-13)





## Channel Settings

### Save Stations to a Channel List Automatically

**MENU** ⇒ **TV** ⇒ **Channel Settings** ⇒ **Automatic** ⇒ **YES** ⇒ **YES** ⇒ Enter title

### Save Stations of a Different Area to a Channel List

**MENU** ⇒ **TV** ⇒ **Channel List** ⇒ **Not stored** ⇒ **Channel setting** ⇒ **Select area** ⇒ Select area ⇒ Select prefecture ⇒ **YES**

### Switch Channel Lists

**MENU** ⇒ **TV** ⇒ **Channel List** ⇒ Select a channel list

## Watching TV

### Start Here

[TV] window ..... P. 8-5

### Show Program Information

[TV] window ⇒ **Program info**

### Adjust Brightness

[TV] window ⇒ **Display setting** ⇒ **Brightness** ⇒ Select a level

### Switch Main & Sub Audio

[TV] window ⇒ **Sound** ⇒ **Main/Sub sound** ⇒ Select an audio output option

### Switch Audio Channels

[TV] window ⇒ **Sound** ⇒ **Sound switch** ⇒ Select an audio channel

This procedure is available when there is more than one audio channel.

### Show Current Channel List Information

[TV] window ⇒ **Channel** ⇒ **Channel info**

### Add Current Station to Channel List

[TV] window ⇒ **Channel** ⇒ **Add channel** ⇒ **YES**

Use this procedure when you find a new station by holding down **TV**.





## Advanced Features

### Select a Program

[TV] window ⇒ ⇒ **Channel** ⇒ ⇒ **Select service** ⇒ ⇒ Select a service (program) ⇒

This procedure is available when more than one service (program) is broadcast from the same station.

## Data Broadcasts

### Start Here

[Data Broadcast Mode] window .....P. 8-5

### Reload Page Accessed from Data Broadcast

[Data Broadcast Mode] window ⇒ ⇒ **Data broadcast** ⇒ ⇒ **Re-read** ⇒

### Check Certificate for SSL Page

[Data Broadcast Mode] window ⇒ ⇒ **Data broadcast** ⇒ ⇒ **Show certificate** ⇒

### Exit Page and Return to Data Broadcast

[Data Broadcast Mode] window ⇒ ⇒ **Data broadcast** ⇒ ⇒ **Back to data BC** ⇒

## TV Link

### Start Here

[Data Broadcast Mode] window... P. 8-5

### Save TV Links

[Data Broadcast Mode] window ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

Some TV links may have expiration dates.

### Access Pages/Information from TV Links

⇒ **TV** ⇒ ⇒ **TV Link** ⇒

Types of TV links are indicated by the following icons:

- Memo information
- Data broadcast site
- Internet content

### Show Details of a TV Link

⇒ **TV** ⇒ ⇒ **TV Link** ⇒ ⇒ Select a TV link ⇒ ⇒ **Display detail** ⇒

### Show Number of Saved TV Links

⇒ **TV** ⇒ ⇒ **TV Link** ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ **No. of TV link** ⇒





### Delete TV Links

**MENU** ⇒ **TV** ⇒ **TV Link** ⇒ **Delete**  
 Select a TV link ⇒ **Delete this, Delete selected** or **Delete all**  
 ⇒ **Select TV links** ⇒ **YES** or enter Handset Code ⇒ **YES**

## Recording Programs

### Start Here

[Recorded Program List] window.....P. 8-7

### Edit Title of a Recorded Program

[Recorded Program List] window  
 ⇒ Select a program ⇒ **Edit title** ⇒ **Edit title**

### Reset Title of a Recorded Program

[Recorded Program List] window  
 ⇒ Select a program ⇒ **Initialize title** ⇒ **YES**

### Switch Views of Recorded Program List Window

[Recorded Program List] window  
 ⇒ **Switch list** ⇒ **Title** or **Title + image**

### Check Information on a Recorded Program

[Recorded Program List] window  
 ⇒ Select a program ⇒ **Show info**

### Check Volume of Recorded Programs

[Recorded Program List] window  
 ⇒ **Check memory**

### Delete Recorded Programs

[Recorded Program List] window  
 ⇒ Select a program ⇒ **Delete this, Delete all** or **Multiple-choice** ⇒ **Enter Handset Code** or select files ⇒ **Delete** ⇒ **YES**

## Playing Programs

### Start Here

[Recorded Program Playback] window ..... P. 8-8

### Specify Point to Start Playback

[Recorded Program Playback] window  
 ⇒ **Location** ⇒ to specify point

## View/Record Timer

### Start Here

[Booking Program List] window ...P. 8-9  
 [View Timer Setting] window....P. 8-9  
 [Timer Recording List] window.....P. 8-9  
 [Record Timer Setting] window ....P. 8-9

### Select a Timer Alarm Tone

[View Timer Setting] window  
 ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ **Select a sub folder** ⇒ **Select an alarm tone**





### Enter Title of Booked Program

[View Timer Setting] window/  
[Record Timer Setting] window →  
 → → Enter program title →

### Set Regular Activation of View/ Record Timer

[View Timer Setting] window/  
[Record Timer Setting] window →  
 → → **1 time, Daily** or **Select day** →   
 When **Select day** is specified, select days of the week and press .

### Set Timer Alarm Volume

[View Timer Setting] window/  
[Record Timer Setting] window →  
 → → to adjust volume →

### Activate TV Directly from Timer Alarm Notification Window

[View Timer Setting] window →  
 → → **ON** or **OFF** →   
 When **ON** is set, press twice and select **YES** from Alarm Notification window to activate TV and watch the booked program.

### Set Priority at Recording Start Time When a TV & Music Group Function is Active

[Record Timer Setting] window →  
 → → **Recording** or  
**Operation preferred** →   
 When **Recording** is set, the function in operation is interrupted/ended, and recording starts. When **Operation preferred** is set, a confirmation window asking whether to start recording appears.

### Edit View/Record Timer Settings

[Booking Program List] window/  
[Timer Recording List] window →  
Select a booked program → →  
Edit each item →

### Change Order of Booked Programs

[Booking Program List] window/  
[Timer Recording List] window →  
 → **Sort** → → Select a criterion →

### Delete Booked Programs

[Booking Program List] window/  
[Timer Recording List] window →  
Select a program → → **Delete** →  
 → **Delete this, Delete selected**  
or **Delete all** → (→ Select  
programs → → or enter  
Handset Code → → **YES** →   
 Select **Delete past** to delete old bookings.

### Check Volume of Recorded Programs

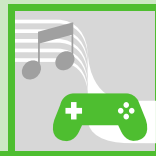
[Timer Recording List] window →  
 → **Memory info** →

### Check Result of Timer Recording

→ **TV** → → **Result Timer Rec**  
→ → Select an entry →   
 Press to play the recorded program.



# Music Player & S! Appli



<b>About Music Player .....</b>	<b>9-2</b>
Playback Windows .....	9-3
Downloading Music .....	9-3
<b>Music Playback .....</b>	<b>9-4</b>
Playing Music.....	9-4
Using Playlists .....	9-5
<b>S! Appli.....</b>	<b>9-6</b>
About S! Appli.....	9-6
Downloading S! Appli .....	9-6
Activating S! Appli .....	9-7
<b>Advanced Features.....</b>	<b>9-8</b>
Music Player.....	9-8
S! Appli .....	9-9

## 9

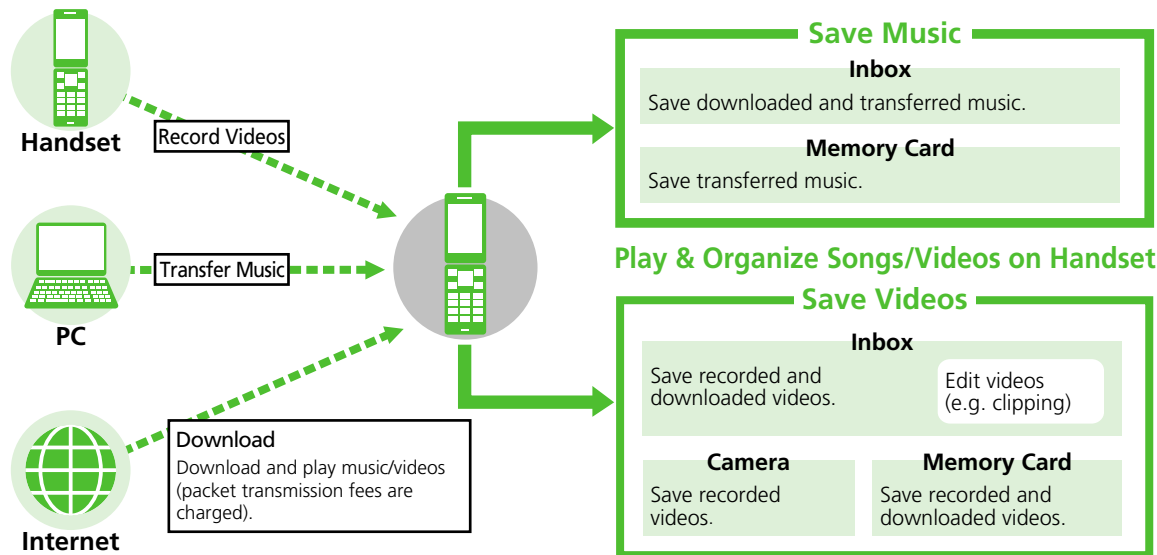




## About Music Player

Use Music Player to play and organize songs on handset.

- Access the Internet to download music.
- Videos can also be played with Music Player.

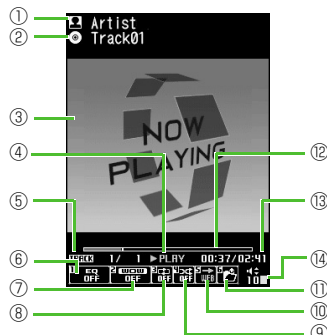




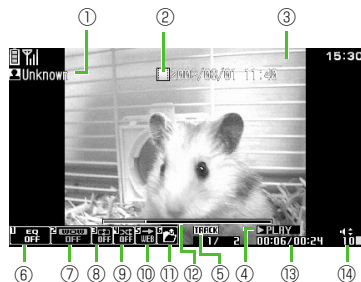


## Playback Windows

Normal Screen Mode



Full Screen Mode (Video Playback Only)



①	Artist Name <Creator>*
②	Title
③	Playback Image <Video>*
④	Playback Status ▶PLAY Play    ⏸PAUSE Pause ⏏FF Fast Forward    ⏮REWIND Rewind ⏴SLOW Slow Play    ⏭PLAY Fast Play
⑤	Current Track/File Number (Total Number of Tracks/Files in Folder)
⑥	Equalizer EQ OFF Bass Booster Treble Treble Booster Treble Reducer Pop Jazz Rock Machine Classical For each genre of music Speed For voice playback
⑦	Sound Effect EQ OFF Bass compensation Surround Bass compensation/Surround User settings
⑧	Repeat Mode OFF    Repeat All Repeat One
⑨	Shuffle Mode ON    OFF

⑩	To Web Connect to the URL in the song.
⑪	Song/file Selection
⑫	Playback Position ▬ indicates the current playback position. You can move the position with ▬ during pause.
⑬	Elapsed Playback Time/Total Playback Time
⑭	Volume

\* Descriptions in < > apply to video playback.

## Downloading Music

- Check the fees, expiration date, etc. on the download site.

1 **MENU** ⇒ **Music** ⇒ **Download Music** ⇒ **YES**

■ **To Search for Songs to Download**  
 ⇒ **Search Music** ⇒ **YES**

2 Follow onscreen instructions

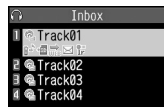




## Playing Music

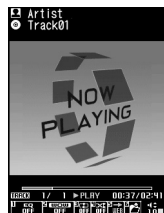
1 ⇒ **Music** ⇒

2 Select a folder ⇒



Song List Window

3 Select a song ⇒



Music Player Playback Window  
(Video Player Playback Window)

### Tip

- Press and hold to activate Music Player from Standby. Music Player plays songs from the position where the last playback was stopped.
- To play videos downloaded or recorded with camera:  
 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ⇒ **Videos**  
⇒ ⇒ Specify a video to play

## Available Keys during Playback

### ● While Handset is Open

Pause/Play	
Adjust Volume	or
Play from Beginning Play Previous Song/Video	or press and hold
Play Next Song/Video	or press and hold
Rewind	Press and hold
Fast Forward	Press and hold

Move Playback Position	during pause
Select a Song/File	/  6
Set Equalizer	1 *
Set Sound Effect	2 *
Set Repeat Mode	3 *
Set Shuffle Mode	4 *
Access the Internet	5
Toggle Normal Screen/ Full Screen	9
End Playback	CLR

\* The setting toggles each time you press the key.

### ● While Handset is Closed

Adjust Volume	/
Play from Beginning Play Previous Song	Press and hold
Play Next Song	Press and hold





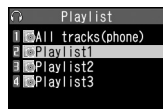
## Using Playlists

Use playlists to play songs by genre or by artist, or gather your favorite songs and arrange them in your favorite order.

- Songs saved on memory card can also be added to playlists.

## Creating a Playlist

- 1 **MENU** ⇒ **Music** ⇒ **Playlist** ⇒ **■**



Playlist List Window

- 2 **[F]** ⇒ **Create playlist** ⇒ **■**

- 3 **Select a folder** ⇒ **■** ⇒

**Select a song** ⇒ **■**

Repeat this step to specify other songs.

- 4 **When all songs are specified** ⇒

**[Enter]** ⇒ **Enter playlist name** ⇒ **■**

**To Start Playing the Playlist**



## Playing a Playlist

- 1 **[Playlist List] window** ⇒

**Select a playlist** ⇒ **■**

**To Play a Playlist from the Beginning**

⇒ **Select a playlist** ⇒ **[Home]**



Playlist Song List Window

**To Play All Songs**

⇒ **All tracks (phone)** ⇒ **■** (twice)

- 2 **Select a song** ⇒ **■**

## More Features

### Advanced

Playing Music

- Resume Playback
- Check Song Details
- Repeat
- Use a Different Function While Playing Music

(▶ P. 9-8)

Organizing Songs

- Set a Song as Ringtone
- Search for Songs
- Change Order of Songs
- Check Volume of Saved Music

(▶ P. 9-8)

Playlists

- Add Songs to Playlist
- Change Order of Playlist Songs
- Cancel Playlist Songs
- Edit a Playlist Name
- Copy a Playlist
- Check Playlist Information
- Delete Playlists

(▶ P. 9-9)

### Customize

Playback Window

- Change Design of Playback Window
- Set Image Display Size

(▶ P. 13-35)





## About S! Appli

S! Appli are applications designed for SoftBank handsets. Download games and other applications.

### ● About Network S! Appli

Since network S! Appli require network connection, transmission fees are incurred. A confirmation window may appear when an application is connecting to the network. Follow onscreen instructions.

#### Tip

- For information on transmission fees, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-46).


### ● About License Information

To check Java™ and JBlend™ license information:

 ⇒ **S! Appli** ⇒  ⇒ **Information**  
⇒ 

## Downloading S! Appli

**1**  ⇒ **S! Appli** ⇒  ⇒  
**S! Appli Library** ⇒  ⇒  
**Download** ⇒  ⇒ **YES** ⇒  


**2** **Select an S! Appli** ⇒  
 **(twice)**

■ **To Activate S! Appli Right Away**  
⇒ **YES** ⇒  ⇒ Select an S! Appli  
⇒ 

■ **To Activate S! Appli Later**  
⇒ **NO** ⇒ 

### Note

- Check the battery level before downloading S! Appli. If the battery level is low, download may fail.
- If you replace USIM Card due to damage or loss, downloaded S! Appli are no longer available.
- If memory card is removed or formatted after saving an S! Appli to *microSD*, the same S! Appli may become unavailable for download. Reinsert memory card, or delete the S! Appli from S! Appli Library and download it again.

### Tip

- See S! Appli's Help menu or the download site for operational information.





## Activating S! Appli

- 1 ⇒ **S! Appli** ⇒ ⇒  
**S! Appli Library** ⇒



S! Appli Library Window

- 2 **Select an application** ⇒

■ **To End S! Appli**

⇒ ⇒ **End** ⇒

### Tip

- S! Appli is paused when a call arrives. S! Appli resumes when the call ends.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### S! Appli

- Check S! Appli Information
- Check Volume of Saved S! Appli
- Delete an S! Appli

(▶ P. 9-9)

### Customize

#### When Running S! Appli

- Set Sound Volume
- Set Vibration
- Set Backlight
- Set Blinking of Backlight
- Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Connect to Network
- Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Write Personal Information
- Reset Security Settings of S! Appli

(▶ P. 13-35)

#### S! Appli Settings

- Reset S! Appli Settings
- Delete All S! Appli

(▶ P. 13-36)





## Music Player

### Start Here

[Music Player Playback] window .....	P. 9-4
[Song List] window .....	P. 9-4
[Playlist List] window .....	P. 9-5
[Playlist Song List] window .....	P. 9-5

### Playing Music

#### Resume Playback

[MENU] ⇒ **Music** ⇒ [■] ⇒ **Resume play** ⇒ [■]

#### Check Song Details

[Music Player Playback] window  
⇒ [P] ⇒ **File property** ⇒ [■]  
[👉] You can view information of the file.

#### Repeat

[Music Player Playback] window  
⇒ [P] ⇒ **Action setting** ⇒ [■] ⇒  
**Repeat setting** ⇒ [■] ⇒ **All repeat**  
or **Single repeat** ⇒ [■]

#### Use a Different Function While Playing Music

[Music Player Playback] window  
⇒ [⏮] ⇒ **Switch to BGM** ⇒ [■] ⇒  
Activate another function  
[👉] Press and hold [P] during background  
music playback to end Music Player.

### Organizing Songs

#### Set a Song as Ringtone

[Song List] window ⇒ Select a  
song ⇒ [P] ⇒ **Select ring tone** ⇒  
[■] ⇒ Select an item ⇒ [■]

#### Search for Songs

[Song List] window/ [Playlist List]  
window/ [Playlist Song List]  
window ⇒ [P] ⇒ **Search** ⇒ [■] ⇒  
Select a search criterion ⇒ [■] ⇒  
Enter condition ⇒ [■]  
[👉] Select a song from search results and  
press [■] to play it.

#### Change Order of Songs

[Song List] window/ [Playlist Song  
List] window ⇒ [P] ⇒ **Sort** ⇒ [■]  
⇒ Select a criterion ⇒ [■]

#### Check Volume of Saved Music

[Song List] window ⇒ [P] ⇒  
**Memory info** ⇒ [■]





### Playlists

#### Add Songs to Playlist

[Playlist Song List] window → [P] → **Edit playlist** → [■] → **Add music** → [■] → Select a folder → [■] → Select songs → [■] → [☑] → **YES** → [■]  
 [H] The songs you specified are added at the end of the playlist.

#### Change Order of Playlist Songs

[Playlist Song List] window → Select a song → [P] → **Edit playlist** → [■] → **Sort playlist** → [■] → Select a position → [■]

#### Cancel Playlist Songs

[Playlist Song List] window → Select a song → [P] → **Edit playlist** → [■] → **Release settings** → [■] → **Release this, Release selected or Release all** → [■] (→ Select songs → [☑] or enter Handset Code → [■]) → **YES** → [■]

#### Edit a Playlist Name

[Playlist List] window → Select a playlist → [P] → **Edit playlist name** → [■] → Edit playlist name → [■]

#### Copy a Playlist

[Playlist List] window → Select a playlist → [P] → **Copy to playlist** → [■]

#### Check Playlist Information

[Playlist List] window → Select a playlist → [P] → **Playlist info** → [■]

#### Delete Playlists

[Playlist List] window → Select a playlist → [P] → **Delete playlist** → [■] → **Delete this, Delete selected or Delete all** → [■] (→ Select playlists → [■] → [☑]) → **YES** → [■]

## S! Appli

### Start Here

[S! Appli Library] window..... P. 9-7

#### Check S! Appli Information

[S! Appli Library] window → Select an S! Appli → [P] → **Properties** → [■]

#### Check Volume of Saved S! Appli

[S! Appli Library] window → [P] → **Memory info** → [■]

#### Delete an S! Appli

[S! Appli Library] window → Select an S! Appli → [P] → **Delete** → [■] → **YES** → [■]







# Tools



<b>Life History Viewer.....</b>	<b>10-2</b>	<b>Alarm.....</b>	<b>10-11</b>
Life History Viewer Window .....	10-2	Setting Alarm.....	10-11
Viewing Data in Chronological Order ...	10-2	Canceling Alarm .....	10-12
<b>Schedule.....</b>	<b>10-3</b>	<b>Bar Code Reader.....</b>	<b>10-13</b>
Schedule Window .....	10-3	Scanning Bar Codes .....	10-13
Saving Events to Schedule .....	10-3	Checking Scanned Data.....	10-14
Checking Saved Events .....	10-4	<b>Text Reader.....</b>	<b>10-15</b>
<b>To Do List .....</b>	<b>10-6</b>	Scanning Text.....	10-16
Saving Tasks.....	10-6	Checking Scanned Text .....	10-17
Checking Saved Tasks .....	10-7	<b>Advanced Features.....</b>	<b>10-18</b>
Deleting Tasks .....	10-7	Life History Viewer .....	10-18
<b>Text Memo .....</b>	<b>10-8</b>	Schedule .....	10-18
Saving Text Memos .....	10-8	To Do List .....	10-19
Deleting Text Memos.....	10-8	Text Memo .....	10-20
<b>Voice Recorder.....</b>	<b>10-9</b>	Alarm.....	10-20
Recording the Other Party's Voice.....	10-9	Bar Code Reader & Text Reader .....	10-21
Recording Your Voice in Standby .....	10-9		
<b>Calculator .....</b>	<b>10-10</b>		

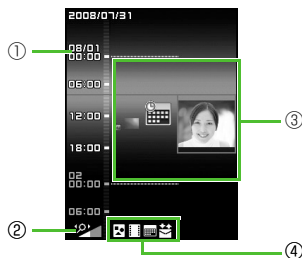
## 10



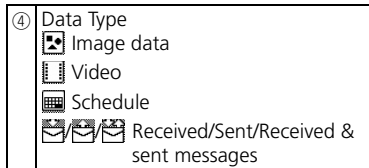


View activities in chronological order.

## Life History Viewer Window



Life History Viewer Window



## Viewing Data in Chronological Order

1 **MENU** → **Tools** → **Life History Viewer**



Life History Viewer Window

■ **To Reduce/Enlarge Scale of Time Axis**



2 **Select a data item**



Life History Viewer Closeup Window

3 **Envelope icon**

The function corresponding to the data type is activated and the data is opened.

## More Features

### Advanced

Life History Viewer

- Hide Some Items in Life History Viewer
- Update Life History Viewer

(▶ P. 10-18)

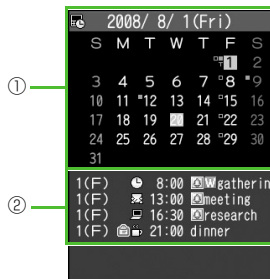




# Schedule

Save future events to Schedule. Set the alarm to be activated at a specified time with message and animation appearing to remind you of the event. Saved events can be checked from Calendar.

## Schedule Window



Schedule Window

①	<b>Calendar</b> Blue date: Saturdays Red date: Sundays, public and other holidays Pink date: Anniversaries __: Today <input type="checkbox"/> : Events for the morning <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> : Events for the afternoon T: Tasks on To Do List
②	<b>Information Panel</b> Date, day of the week, content type icon, time, and saved content <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Content Type Icon             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(or a user icon) Event</li> <li>Holiday</li> <li>Anniversary</li> <li>Task</li> </ul> </li> <li>Event Repetition Icon             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Daily event</li> <li>Weekly event</li> <li>Annual event</li> <li>Event for over a day</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## Saving Events to Schedule

① ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Schedule** ⇒

② ⇒ **Schedule** ⇒



Event Edit Window

③ ⇒ ⇒ **Enter content** ⇒ ⇒ **Select an icon** ⇒

④ ⇒ ⇒ **Enter start/end date and time** ⇒





## 5 **1 time, Daily** () **or Select day** ()

■ **To Specify Days of the Week**  
**Select day** () Put checkmarks to days of the week

## 6 **Select an alarm notification option**

■ **To Activate Alarm Prior to Event**  
**ON/Set time** Enter time

## 7 **Select an alarm tone type** ( **Select a folder** **Select an alarm tone** )

You cannot select a folder when **Clock Alarm Tone** or **OFF** is selected.

## 8 **Enter alarm notification message**

## ● Alarm Notification Operations

When the set time arrives, alarm sounds and animation appears (on Display and My Signal Display) for approximately five minutes.

Press any key to stop the alarm tone.

Press any key again to end notification message.

### Tip

- If the set alarm time arrives during a call, alarm tone sounds through earpiece.
- If a call arrives while the alarm is sounding, the alarm stops.

## Adding Holidays/Anniversaries

### 1 [Schedule] window **Holiday or Anniversary**

### 2 **Enter year, month and date**

### 3 **1 time or Annually** ()

### 4 **Enter content**

### 5

## Checking Saved Events

### 1 **Tools** **Schedule**



Schedule Window

■ **To Toggle between Weekly View and Monthly View**

### 2 to select a date with events



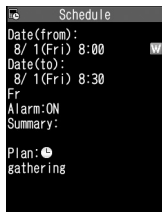
Event List Window





## Schedule

### 3 Select an event →



Event Details Window

## Deleting Events

### ● To Delete One Event

#### 1 [Event List] window →

Select an event →

#### 2 Delete → → Delete this → → YES →

### ● To Delete Multiple Events

#### 1 [Event List] window →

#### 2 Delete → → Delete selected →

### 3 Select an event →

Repeat this step to specify other events.

### 4 → YES →

### ● To Delete All Events Prior to a Specified Date

#### 1 [Schedule] window/[Event List] window → Select a date →

#### 2 Delete → → Delete past → → Select an item → → YES →

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Checking Saved Events

- Sort Events by Icon
- Save User Icons
- Delete User Icons
- Check Number of Saved Events
- Edit an Event
- Copy an Event
- Make/Cancel Secret Setting of an Event
- Delete All Events
- Reset Holidays
- Search Information by Keyword (► P. 10-18)

### Customize

#### Alarm

- Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time
- Change Alarm Tone

(► P. 13-3)





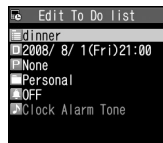
# To Do List

Save tasks to To Do List. Set the alarm to remind you of deadlines.

## Saving Tasks

- 1  $\Rightarrow$  **Tools**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **To Do List**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$

- **To Edit a Saved Task**  
 $\Rightarrow$  Select a task  $\Rightarrow$



Task Edit Window

- 2  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Enter content**  $\Rightarrow$

- 3  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Enter date**  $\Rightarrow$    
 $\Rightarrow$  **Enter due date and time**  $\Rightarrow$

- **To Enter Due Date from Calendar**  
 $\Rightarrow$  **Choose date**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Select a date on Calendar  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Enter time  $\Rightarrow$

- **To Cancel a Due Date**  
 $\Rightarrow$  **No date**  $\Rightarrow$

- 4  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Select a priority level**  $\Rightarrow$

- 5  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Select a category**  $\Rightarrow$

- 6  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Select an alarm notification option**  $\Rightarrow$

- **To Activate Alarm Prior to Due Time**  
 $\Rightarrow$  **ON/Set time**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Enter time

- 7  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Select an alarm tone type**  $\Rightarrow$  ( $\Rightarrow$  **Select a folder**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Select an alarm tone**  $\Rightarrow$  )  $\Rightarrow$

You cannot select a folder when **Clock Alarm Tone** or **OFF** is selected.

## Alarm Notification Operations

When the set time arrives, alarm sounds and animation appears (on Display and My Signal Display) for approximately five minutes.

Press any key to stop the alarm tone.

Press any key again to end notification message.

### Tip

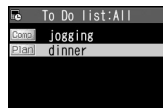
- If the set alarm time arrives during a call, alarm tone sounds through earpiece.
- If a call arrives while the alarm is sounding, the alarm stops.





## Checking Saved Tasks

- 1 → **Tools** → → **To Do List** →



Task List Window

- 2 Select a task →



Task Details Window

### Tip

- Overdue tasks are indicated by red status icons (e.g. ).

## Deleting Tasks

- To Delete One Task

- 1 [Task List] window → Select a task →
- 2 **Delete** → → **Delete this** → → **YES** →

- To Delete Multiple Tasks

- 1 [Task List] window →
- 2 **Delete** → → **Delete selected** →
- 3 Select a task →   
Repeat this step to specify other tasks.
- 4 → **YES** →

- To Delete All Tasks in **Completion Status**

- 1 [Task List] window →
- 2 **Delete** → → **Delete completed** → → **YES** →

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Checking Saved Tasks

- Sort Tasks by Category
- Change Order of Tasks
- Set Task Status
- Enter a Task Completion Date
- Delete All Tasks

(► P. 10-19)

### Customize

#### Alarm

- Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time
- Change Alarm Tone

(► P. 13-3)





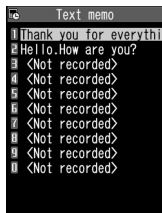
# Text Memo

Save short notes or messages as text memos.

- Saved text memos can be inserted in Schedule or in messages.

## Saving Text Memos

- 1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Text Memo** ⇒



Text Memo List Window

- 2 **<Not recorded>** ⇒ ⇒ **Enter content** ⇒

- **To Edit a Saved Text Memo**  
⇒ Select a text memo ⇒ ⇒ Edit content ⇒

## Deleting Text Memos

- **To Delete One Text Memo**

- 1 **[Text Memo List] window** ⇒ Select a text memo ⇒
- 2 **Delete** ⇒ ⇒ **Delete this** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

- **To Delete Multiple Text Memos**

- 1 **[Text Memo List] window** ⇒
- 2 **Delete** ⇒ ⇒ **Delete selected** ⇒
- 3 **Select a text memo** ⇒   
Repeat this step to specify other text memos.
- 4 ⇒ **YES** ⇒

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Text Memo

- Save a Text Memo to Schedule
- Sort Text Memos by Category
- Check Text Memo Information
- Delete All Text Memos

(▶ P. 10-20)





# Voice Recorder

The following two types of voice memos can be recorded with Voice Recorder:

“Voice memo during a call” to record the other party’s voice during a call; and “Voice memo in Standby” to record your voice in Standby.

- Only one entry, either a voice memo during a call or a voice memo in Standby, can be saved on handset. When a new voice memo is recorded, the previously saved entry is overwritten.
- The available recording time is 20 seconds for both types of voice memos.
- See P. 3-4 and P. 3-18 for playing and deleting a recorded voice memo.

## Recording the Other Party’s Voice

### 1 Press and hold during a call

A short beep sounds through the earpiece, and recording starts. When remaining recording time reaches five seconds, a short beep sounds. When recording is finished, two short beeps sound.

#### ■ To Stop Recording

→ or press and hold

## Recording Your Voice in Standby

### 1 → **Tools** → → **Voice Memo** →

### 2 **YES** → → **Record your voice**

Speak at the microphone when you hear a short beep through the earpiece.

When remaining recording time reaches five seconds, a short beep sounds. When recording is finished, two short beeps sound.

#### ■ To Stop Recording

→

#### Tip

- Recording stops automatically when a call arrives, alarm goes off or another function is activated.





# Calculator

1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Calculator** ⇒

2 Enter numbers with Keypad  
⇒ Enter  $+$  /  $-$  /  $\times$  /  $\div$  with Multi Selector

■ To Calculate Negative Numbers  
⇒ ⇒ - ⇒ Enter  $+$  /  $-$  /  $\times$  /  $\div$  with Multi Selector

3 Result appears.

## Available Functions

Enter Number	-
+ (Add)	
- (Subtract)	
$\times$ (Multiply)	
$\div$ (Divide)	
= (Equal)	
Decimal Point	
Cancel Calculation	
Clear Number	

### Tip

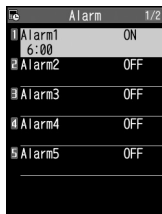
- If the calculation result exceeds 10 digits, *.E* appears.





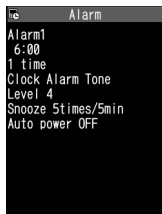
## Setting Alarm

- 1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Alarm**



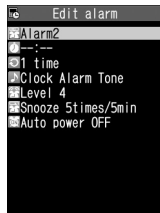
Alarm List Window

- **To Check Previous Alarm Settings**  
⇒ Select an alarm ⇒



Alarm Details Window

- 2 Select an alarm ⇒



Alarm Setting Window

- 3 ⇒ ⇒ Enter title ⇒

- 4 ⇒ ⇒ Enter time ⇒

- 5 ⇒ ⇒ **1 time, Daily** ()  
or **Select day** () ⇒

- **To Specify Days of the Week**  
⇒ **Select day** () ⇒ ⇒ Put checkmarks to days of the week ⇒

- 6 ⇒ ⇒ Select an alarm tone type ⇒ (⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ⇒ Select an alarm tone ⇒ )

You cannot select a folder when **Clock Alarm Tone** or **OFF** is selected.

- 7 ⇒ ⇒ to adjust volume ⇒

- 8 ⇒ ⇒ **ON** ⇒ ⇒ Enter number of activation times  
⇒ Enter time interval

- **To Cancel Snooze**  
⇒ **OFF** ⇒ ⇒ Enter ringing duration

- 9 ⇒ ⇒ **ON** or **OFF** ⇒ ⇒






## ● Alarm Activation Operations

When the set time arrives, alarm is activated and animation appears (on Display and My Signal Display). When the auto power-on function is set to **ON** in Alarm Setting window, handset is automatically turned on, if it has been off, to activate the alarm.

Press any key to stop the alarm tone.

When Snooze is set to **OFF**, press any key again to cancel the alarm with two short beeps, and return to the window before the alarm activation.

When Snooze is set to **ON**, the alarm sounds repeatedly in the set time interval. Press  to cancel Snooze with two short beeps.

### Note

- The alarm/snooze cancellation beeps do not sound when **Keypad sound** is set to **OFF**.


### Tip

- Set the auto power-on function to **OFF** in Alarm Setting window and turn off handset, when you are near high-precision electronic devices or devices using weak signals, on an aircraft or in a hospital where handset use is prohibited.
- If a call arrives while the alarm is sounding, the alarm stops.
- If the alarm activation time comes during a call, Snooze does not work even if it is set to **ON**.

## Canceling Alarm

### 1 [Alarm List] window →

Select an alarm →  

Each time you press , the alarm toggles between ON and OFF.

### Tip

- Alarm settings are retained even if the alarm is canceled.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Checking Alarm Settings

- Cancel All Alarms
- Edit Alarm Settings

(▶ P. 10-20)

### Customize

#### Alarm

- Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time
- Change Alarm Tone

(▶ P. 13-3)





# Bar Code Reader

JAN codes and QR codes can be scanned by Bar Code Reader using handset camera.

## About JAN & QR Codes

### ●JAN Code

A bar code made of vertical lines (bars) with different widths and spaces in between, representing numbers. Handset can scan 8-digit (JAN8) and 13-digit (JAN13) bar codes.



### ●QR Code

A two-dimensional code representing alphanumerics, kanji, kana, or pictographs. Some QR codes are made up of several data areas that are scanned as individual QR codes and then automatically combined as one QR code.



## Scanning Bar Codes

- Slide Macro Switch to (macro), and position handset camera at a distance of 6 to 8 cm from the bar code.

**1** ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Bar Code Reader** ⇒

## 2 Frame the bar code in the recognition field



Bar Code Scanning Window

Scanning starts automatically.

, , and indicate the corners of the recognition field.

### ■To Cancel Scanning

⇒ ⇒ **OK** ⇒

### ■To Adjust Zoom

⇒ (Zoom out)/ (Zoom in)

### ■To Scan a QR Code Made of Several Data Areas (QR Codes)

⇒ **OK** ⇒ (twice) ⇒ Scan a QR code

Repeat this step to scan other QR codes.

Unless all component QR codes are scanned, the scanned data cannot be shown or saved on handset.





## 3 Check scanned data

■ To Discard Scanned Data

⇒ CLR ⇒ YES ⇒ ■

## 4 [F] ⇒ Store ⇒ ■ ⇒ YES ⇒

■ ⇒ OK ⇒ ■

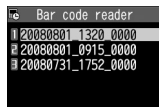
### Tip

- A JAN code/QR code must be accurately focused and be enlarged to fill the recognition field.
- Scanning may take a while.
- Some bar codes may not be scanned depending on the size, version or print quality, or due to scratches, stains, damage or the reflection of light.

## Checking Scanned Data

### 1 [Bar Code Scanning]

window ⇒ [F] ⇒ Reading data list ⇒ ■



Scanned Bar Code Data List Window

### 2 Select an entry ⇒ ■



Scanned Bar Code Data Details Window

### Tip

- Characters that are not supported by Bar Code Reader are replaced with spaces (blanks).

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Scanning Bar Codes

- Scan Bar Code during Text Entry (► P. 10-21)

#### Using Scanned Data

- Make a Call
- Compose a Message
- Access the Internet
- Save to Phone Book
- Save a Bookmark
- Copy Text
- Edit Title of Scanned Data
- Delete Scanned Data

(► P. 10-22)





# Text Reader

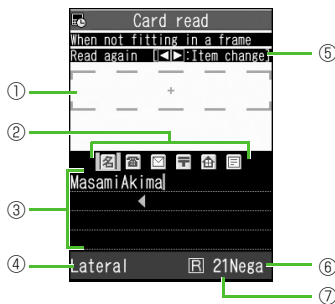
Use Text Reader to scan printed text.

## Scan Modes

Card read	Scan name, phone number, e-mail address, postal code, address and memo printed on business cards, and save all scanned data collectively as a Phone Book entry.
Compose message	Scan address, subject or message text, and open Composition (S! Mail) window with the address, subject or message text entered.
URL	Scan URL, and access the page or save the URL to Bookmark.
Mail address	Scan e-mail address, and compose an S! Mail to the address.
Phone number	Scan phone number, and make a call to the number.

Free memo	Scan Japanese or English text, and save the text to Text Memo.
-----------	----------------------------------------------------------------

## Text Scanning Window




Text Scanning Window

①	Recognition Frame
②	Scan Item Icons <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Name</li> <li>Phone number</li> <li>E-mail address</li> <li>Postal code</li> <li>Address</li> <li>Memo</li> <li>To Address</li> <li>Subject</li> <li>Message text</li> </ul>
③	Recognized Text Field
④	Recognition Mode
⑤	Key Guidance
⑥	Negative Mode <i>Nega</i> appears when <i>NEGA/POSI mode</i> is set to <i>Negative fix</i> .
⑦	Remaining Number of Characters That Can be Scanned





## Scanning Text


- Slide Macro Switch to  (macro), and position handset camera at a distance of 6 to 8 cm from the text.



1  ⇒ **Tools** ⇒  ⇒ **Text Reader** ⇒ 

2 **New** ⇒  ⇒ **Select a scan mode** ⇒ 



Text Scanning Window

3  to select a scan item icon  
⇒ **Frame text in the recognition frame**

- **To Adjust Zoom**  
⇒  (Zoom in)/ (Zoom out)

4 

The text is scanned.  
The recognized text appears.

■ **To Rescan the Same Text**

⇒  ⇒ **YES** ⇒ 



■ **When Scanned Text Overflows Recognized Text Field**

⇒  to scroll the field




■ **To Save Scanned Text without Correcting It**

⇒ 

■ **To Scan Following Text**

⇒  ⇒ Frame text in the recognition frame (include several scanned characters of the preceding text) ⇒  (twice)

■ **To Scan Another Item**

⇒  ⇒  to select a scan item icon  
⇒ Frame text in the recognition frame ⇒  (twice)

5  ⇒ **Store** ⇒ 

### Tip

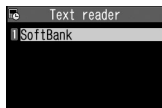
- Text must be accurately focused and be enlarged to fill the recognition frame.
- When **Processing** ... appears, do not move handset.
- Handwritten text cannot be recognized.
- Text may not be recognized correctly when:
  - Faxed or copied text is scanned.
  - Decorated characters are scanned.
  - Spaces between characters are uneven.
- Text is indistinguishable from the background.
- Ambient lighting is inappropriate.





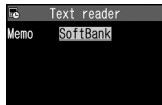
## Checking Scanned Text

- 1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Text Reader** ⇒ ⇒ **Reading data list** ⇒



Scanned Text List Window

- 2 **Select an entry** ⇒



Scanned Text Details Window

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Scanning Text

- Scan Text during Text Entry
- Correct Scanned Text
- Edit Scanned Text
- Set Printing Status of Text
- Set Guidance On/Off
- Set Vertical/Lateral Scan

(▶ P. 10-21)

#### Using Scanned Data

- Make a Call
- Compose a Message
- Access the Internet
- Save to Phone Book
- Save a Bookmark
- Search Phone Book
- Save a Text Memo
- Copy Text
- Delete Scanned Data

(▶ P. 10-22)





## Life History Viewer

### Start Here

[Life History Viewer] window  
..... P. 10-2  
[Life History Viewer Closeup] window  
..... P. 10-2

### Hide Some Items in Life History Viewer

[Life History Viewer] window/  
[Life History Viewer Closeup]  
window ⇒ ⇒ **Display setting**  
⇒ ⇒ Select a data item ⇒   
⇒ Select an item ⇒ ⇒

Only checked items are shown in Life History Viewer window.

### Update Life History Viewer

[Life History Viewer] window/  
[Life History Viewer Closeup]  
window ⇒ ⇒ **Reload** ⇒

## Schedule

### Start Here

[Schedule] window..... P. 10-3  
[Event Edit] window..... P. 10-3  
[Event List] window ..... P. 10-4  
[Event Details] window..... P. 10-5

### Checking Saved Events

#### Sort Events by Icon

[Schedule] window/ [Event List]  
window/ [Event Details] window  
⇒ ⇒ **Icon display** ⇒ ⇒  
Select an icon ⇒

#### Save User Icons

[Schedule] window/ [Event List]  
window/ [Event Details] window  
⇒ ⇒ **User icon setting** ⇒ ⇒  
Select an item ⇒ ⇒ Select a  
folder ⇒ ⇒ Select an image ⇒

Saved user icons can be used when saving events to Schedule.

### Delete User Icons

[Schedule] window/ [Event List]  
window/ [Event Details] window  
⇒ ⇒ **User icon setting** ⇒ ⇒  
Select an item ⇒ ⇒ **Release  
this** ⇒ (⇒ **YES** ⇒ )

To delete all user icons, select **Release  
all** and press .

### Check Number of Saved Events

[Schedule] window ⇒ ⇒ **No.  
of schedules** ⇒

### Edit an Event

[Event List] window/ [Event  
Details] window ⇒ ⇒ **Edit** ⇒  
 ⇒ Edit each item ⇒





### Copy an Event

[Event List] window/ [Event Details] window ⇒ ⇒ **Copy** ⇒ ⇒ Edit each item ⇒

Repetition setting of an event is canceled when it is copied.

### Make/Cancel Secret Setting of an Event

- To Make Secret Setting

[Event Edit] window ⇒ Enter each item ⇒

- To Cancel Secret Setting

[Event List] window/ [Event Details] window ⇒ ⇒ **Release secret** ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒

Before making/canceling secret setting, set handset to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode (P. 4-6).

### Delete All Events

[Schedule] window/ [Event List] window/ [Event Details] window ⇒ ⇒ **Delete** ⇒ ⇒ **Delete all** ⇒ ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒ ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒

### Reset Holidays

[Schedule] window ⇒ ⇒ **Reset holiday** ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒

### Search Information by Keyword

[Event Details] window ⇒ ⇒ **Quick Search** ⇒ ⇒ **Enter keyword** ⇒ ⇒ Enter keyword ⇒ ⇒ **Search** ⇒ ⇒ Select an item from search results ⇒

To select a keyword from previous entries, select **Quote keyword**, press , select a keyword, and then press .

## To Do List

### Start Here

[Task List] window..... P. 10-7

[Task Details] window..... P. 10-7

### Checking Saved Tasks

### Sort Tasks by Category

[Task List] window ⇒ ⇒ **Category display** ⇒ ⇒ Select a category ⇒

### Change Order of Tasks

[Task List] window ⇒ ⇒ **Sort/Filter** ⇒ ⇒ Select a criterion ⇒





### Set Task Status

[Task List] window/ [Task Details] window (⇒ Select a task) ⇒ [P] ⇒ **Change status** ⇒ [■] ⇒ Select a status ⇒ [■]

👉 The set status is indicated by the status icon in Task List window and in Task Details window.

👉 When **Completion** is set as status, enter the completion date.

### Enter a Task Completion Date

[Task List] window ⇒ Select a task ⇒ [■] ⇒ [■] ⇒ [■] ⇒ **Enter date** ⇒ [■] ⇒ Enter year, month and date ⇒ [■] ⇒ [■]

👉 To enter a completion date from Calendar, select **Choose date**, press [■] and then select a date.

👉 You cannot enter a completion date unless the task status is set to **Completion**.

### Delete All Tasks

[Task List] window ⇒ [P] ⇒ **Delete** ⇒ [■] ⇒ **Delete all** ⇒ [■] ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒ [■] ⇒ **YES** ⇒ [■]

## Text Memo

### Start Here

[Text Memo List] window ..... P. 10-8

### Save a Text Memo to Schedule

[Text Memo List] window ⇒ Select a text memo ⇒ [P] ⇒ **Edit schedule** ⇒ [■] ⇒ Enter each item ⇒ [■]

👉 Event Edit window opens with the text memo set as event content.

### Sort Text Memos by Category

[Text Memo List] window ⇒ Select a text memo ⇒ [P] ⇒ **Category** ⇒ [■] ⇒ Select a category ⇒ [■]

### Check Text Memo Information

[Text Memo List] window ⇒ Select a text memo ⇒ [P] ⇒ **Text memo info** ⇒ [■]

### Delete All Text Memos

[Text Memo List] window ⇒ [P] ⇒ **Delete** ⇒ [■] ⇒ **Delete all** ⇒ [■] ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒ [■] ⇒ **YES** ⇒ [■]

## Alarm

### Start Here

[Alarm List] window ..... P. 10-11

[Alarm Details] window ..... P. 10-11

### Checking Alarm Settings

### Cancel All Alarms

[Alarm List] window/ [Alarm Details] window ⇒ [P] ⇒ **Release all** ⇒ [■] ⇒ **YES** ⇒ [■]





### Edit Alarm Settings

[Alarm List] window → Select an alarm → → Edit each item →

## Bar Code Reader & Text Reader

### Start Here

[Scanned Bar Code Data List] window ..... P. 10-14  
 [Scanned Bar Code Data Details] window ..... P. 10-14  
 [Text Scanning] window ..... P. 10-16  
 [Scanned Text List] window ..... P. 10-17  
 [Scanned Text Details] window ..... P. 10-17

### Scanning Bar Codes/Text

#### Scan Bar Code/Text during Text Entry

[Text Entry] window → → *Quote data* → → *Bar code reader* or *Text reader* → → Scan a bar code/text

#### Correct Scanned Text

[Text Scanning] window → Scan text → to move cursor to the character you want to correct → Press the number key corresponding to the correct character on the suggestion list  
 Press to toggle between upper case and lower case.

### Edit Scanned Text

[Text Scanning] window → Scan text → → *Edit* → → Edit text using keypad  
 To cancel editing and return to scanned text, press , select *Select recog. data* and then press .

### Set Printing Status of Text

[Text Scanning] window → → *NEGA/POSI mode* → → *Auto setting, Positive fix* or *Negative fix* →   
 Set to *Positive fix* when dark-colored text is printed on a light-colored background.  
 Set to *Negative fix* when light-colored text is printed on a dark-colored background.

### Set Guidance On/Off

[Text Scanning] window → → *Guidance OFF* or *Guidance ON* →





### Set Vertical/Lateral Scan

[Text Scanning] window → → **Vertical writing** or **Lateral writing** →

### Using Scanned Data

#### Make a Call

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] window/ [Scanned Text Details] window → Select a phone number → → **Dialing** → → **Voice phone** or **Video Call** → → **Dial** → → Talk → to end call

#### Compose a Message

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] window/ [Scanned Text Details] window → Select an e-mail address → → **Create S! mail** → → Compose and send S! Mail

### Access the Internet

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] window/ [Scanned Text Details] window → Select a URL → → **Internet** → → **YES** →

### Save to Phone Book

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] window/ [Scanned Text Details] window → Select an item → → **Add to phonebook** → → **Phone** or **USIM** → → **New, Add** or **Overwrite** → (→ Search Phone Book → Select an entry → (twice)) → Edit each item →

### Save a Bookmark

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] window/ [Scanned Text Details] window → Select a URL → → **Add bookmark** → (twice) → Select a folder →

### Search Phone Book

[Scanned Text Details] window → Select an item → → **Search phonebook** → → Search Phone Book

### Save a Text Memo

[Scanned Text Details] window → Select an item → → **Add to memo** →

### Copy Text

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] window/ [Scanned Text Details] window → → **Copy** → → Select beginning of characters → → Select end of characters →





### Edit Title of Scanned Data

[Scanned Bar Code Data List]  
window → Select an entry →   
→ **Edit title** → ☐ → Edit title →  
☐

### Delete Scanned Data

[Scanned Bar Code Data List]  
window/ [Scanned Text List]  
window → Select an entry →   
→ **Delete this** or **Delete all** → ☐  
(→ Enter Handset Code → ☐ →  
**YES** → ☐







# Data Management



<b>About Data Folder .....</b>	<b>11-2</b>	<b>Managing Memory Cards .....</b>	<b>11-11</b>
<b>Accessing Files .....</b>	<b>11-3</b>	Formatting a Memory Card .....	11-11
Opening Files.....	11-3	Accessing Memory Card Data .....	11-11
Creating Animations.....	11-4	Copying Data between Handset &	
Using Playlist (Melodies).....	11-4	Memory Card .....	11-12
Using Playlists (Videos) .....	11-5	Configuring Print Settings of	
<b>Editing Files.....</b>	<b>11-7</b>	Images .....	11-13
Editing Still Images .....	11-7	<b>Advanced Features.....</b>	<b>11-14</b>
Editing Videos .....	11-8	Accessing Files.....	11-14
<b>File &amp; Folder Management .....</b>	<b>11-9</b>	Editing Files.....	11-15
Creating a Folder .....	11-9	Managing Folders.....	11-16
Moving Files to a Different Folder .....	11-9	Managing Files.....	11-16
<b>About Memory Card .....</b>	<b>11-10</b>	Memory Card .....	11-17
Inserting & Removing a Memory			
Card.....	11-10		

## 11





# About Data Folder

Use Data Folder to manage data on handset. New data created by handset functions or obtained via the Internet or mail are saved to different folders according to the file format.

- Some folders contain links. Use the links to access download sites in Yahoo! Keitai.

## Folders & Files in Data Folder

### My Picture

Image files such as those taken by camera and downloaded My Pictograms

### Melody

Melodies and audio files recorded by Voice Announce

### S! Appli

Downloaded S! Appli

### Ring Songs · Music

Chaku-Uta®, Chaku-Uta Full® and downloaded music files

### Videos

Video files such as those recorded by camera

### TV

Recorded programs\*<sup>1</sup> and still images captured from programs\*<sup>2</sup>

### My Signal

Downloaded My Signal files

\*1 Can be saved on memory card only.

\*2 Can be saved on handset only.

When Data Folder memory is full or number of files savable is reached, a message asks whether to delete unnecessary data (note, however, this message may not appear depending on the data type). Follow the steps below to delete data:

YES → ☐ → Select a folder → ☐ → Select a data item → ☐ → ☐ → YES → ☐

\* You may need to select a data type before selecting a folder if the data you want to delete has multiple storage areas.

\* You may need to select more than one data item to delete depending on the degree of insufficient memory.

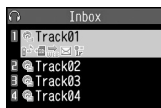




## Opening Files

1 → **Data Folder** →

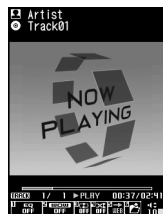
2 Select a folder and a sub folder →



File List Window

■ To Open a File on Memory Card  
→ *microSD* →

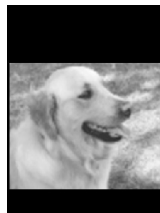
3 Select a file →



Opened File Window

## Functions in My Picture Window

Selecting a file in My Picture folder opens a window such as below.



My Picture Window

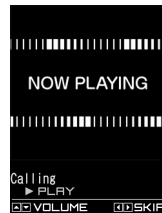
The following operations are possible in My Picture window.

Switch Files	
Toggle Normal Screen/Full Screen	
Zoom In/Zoom Out*	
Show at Actual Size*	
Scroll Large-sized or Zoomed-in Image*	

\* Press to return to the original size.

## Functions in Melody Window

Selecting a file in Melody folder opens a window such as below.



Melody Window

The following operations are possible in Melody window.

Switch Files	
Adjust Volume	or
Stop	
End	





## Functions in My Signal File

Selecting an animation file in My Signal folder plays the animation for about 15 seconds in My Signal Display. The following operations are possible while playing a My Signal file.

Stop/Play	
Set as My Signal	

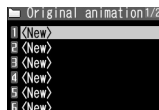
### Tip

- Selecting a file in S! Appli folder activates S! Appli. For details on S! Appli, see P. 9-6.
- Selecting a file in Ring Songs · Music folder or Videos folder activates Music Player. For details on Music Player, see P. 9-3.

## Creating Animations

Create animations each of which is made of up to 20 frames using still images in My Picture folder.

- 1 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ⇒ **My Picture** ⇒ ⇒ **Original animation** ⇒



Original Animation List Window

- 2 **<New>** ⇒
- 3 **Select a frame** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a folder** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a still image** ⇒   
Repeat this step to assign a series of images to their respective frames.
- **To Cancel an Assigned Image**  
⇒ **Select a frame** ⇒ ⇒ **Release this** ⇒

## 4

### Note

- Only images in JPEG format can be used for creating animations.
- Some images may be unavailable depending on the image size or file size.
- Images saved on external memory devices (i.e. memory card) cannot be used.

### Tip

- Select an animation you created in Original Animation List window and press to play the animation.

## Using Playlist (Melodies)

Save melodies to Playlist to play back in the saved order.

- 1 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ⇒ **Melody** ⇒ ⇒ **Playlist** ⇒ ⇒ **Edit playlist** ⇒
- **To Clear Playlist**  
⇒ ⇒ **Release playlist** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒





- 2 Select a number → →  
 Select a folder → →  
 Select a melody →

Repeat this step to assign other melodies to different numbers.

■ **To Cancel an Assigned Melody**

- Select a number → →  
*Release this* →

### 3

#### Tip

- Select Playlist folder in Melody and press to play Playlist.
- Changing file names of melodies on Playlist, or deleting melody files clears Playlist.

## Using Playlists (Videos)

Save videos to a playlist to play them in the playlist order.

- 1 → **Data Folder** → →  
**Videos** → → **Playlist** →



Playlist List Window

- 2 Select a playlist → → **Edit playlist** →

- 3 Select a number → →  
 Select a folder → →  
 Select a video →

Repeat this step to assign other videos to different numbers.

■ **To Cancel an Assigned Video**

- Select a number → →  
*Release this* → → **YES** →

### 4

#### Tip

- Select a playlist in Playlist List window and press to play the playlist.





### More Features



#### Advanced

##### Opening Files

- Check File Information
- Change Order of Files
- Set an Image to Appear in Standby
- Set a Video to Appear in Standby
- Set a Melody/Video as Ringtone

(▶ P. 11-14)

##### Viewing Images

- Play Animation from the Beginning
- Compose Four Images to Make One
- Set Display Size of an Image
- Edit Title of an Original Animation
- Cancel an Original Animation

(▶ P. 11-14)

##### Playing Melodies

- Play All Melodies in the Same Folder Repeatedly

(▶ P. 11-15)

##### Playing Videos

- Switch Display Format of File List Window
- Clear a Playlist

(▶ P. 11-15)



### Customize

#### Display Settings

- Set Image List View

(▶ P. 13-4)

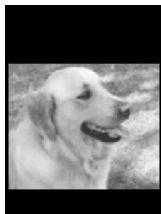




## Editing Still Images

### Basic Flow of Operations

- 1 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ⇒ **My Picture** ⇒ ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ⇒ Select an image ⇒



My Picture Window

- 2 ⇒ **Edit image** ⇒ ⇒ Select an editing option ⇒ ⇒ Edit image
- 3 to end editing

- 4 ⇒ **YES or NO** ⇒

Selecting **YES** overwrites the original image. Selecting **NO** saves the edited image as a new file in the same folder.

#### Note

- Only images with can be edited.
- Repeated editing may cause deterioration of image quality or increased file size.

### Adding a Frame

- 1 [My Picture] window ⇒ ⇒ **Edit image** ⇒ ⇒ **Frame** ⇒

- 2 Select a frame ⇒

■ To Change Frame



■ To Rotate Frame 180 Degrees



■ To Cancel Frame



- 3

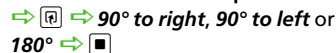
- 4 ⇒ **YES or NO** ⇒

### Adding Stamps

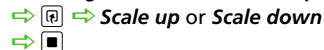
- 1 [My Picture] window ⇒ ⇒ **Edit image** ⇒ ⇒ **Marker stamp** ⇒

- 2 Select a marker stamp ⇒

■ To Rotate Marker Stamp



■ To Enlarge/Reduce Marker Stamp

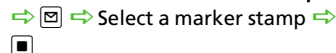


■ To Cancel Marker Stamp



- 3 to select a position ⇒

■ To Paste Another Marker Stamp

























- 4

- 5 ⇒ **YES or NO** ⇒














## Pasting a Text Stamp











- 1 [My Picture] window    
 ⇒ **Edit image** ⇒  ⇒   
**Character stamp** ⇒ 
- 2 Enter text ⇒ 
  - To Edit Text  
 ⇒  ⇒ **Character input** ⇒  ⇒   
 Enter text ⇒ 
  - To Change Text Color  
 ⇒  ⇒ **Character color** ⇒  ⇒   
 Select a color ⇒    
 Press  to toggle color palettes.
  - To Change Font Type  
 ⇒  ⇒ **Font type** ⇒  ⇒   
**Gothic** or **Ming-cho** ⇒ 
  - To Change Font Size  
 ⇒  ⇒ **Font size** ⇒  ⇒ Select   
 a font size ⇒ 
- 3  to select a position ⇒ 
- 4 
- 5  ⇒ **YES** or **NO** ⇒ 

## Cropping an Image




- 1 [My Picture] window    
 ⇒ **Edit image** ⇒  ⇒ **Trim**   
**away** ⇒ 
- 2 Select a size ⇒  ⇒  to   
 position cropping area ⇒ 
- 3 
- 4  ⇒ **YES** or **NO** ⇒ 

## Editing Videos

Clip the desired scenes from saved videos.

- 1  ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒  ⇒   
**Videos** ⇒  ⇒ Select a   
 folder ⇒  ⇒ Select a video   
 ⇒  ⇒ **Edit Video** ⇒ 
- 2  ⇒ **Trim Videos** ⇒  ⇒   
**Any size** or **500KB** ⇒ 
- 3    
 The video playback and clipping   
 start at the same time.

### ■ To Start from a Halfway Point

- ⇒  ⇒ At a desired point ⇒    
 ⇒ 


- 4  to stop ⇒ 

Selected portion plays.

When **500KB** is selected, clipping   
 stops automatically when the size of   
 clipped video reaches 500 KB.

- 5  (twice) ⇒ **YES** ⇒ 

### Note

- Only QCIF (176 × 144) or smaller videos   
 with  can be clipped.
- Editing may cause deterioration of   
 image quality.

## More Features

### Advanced

Editing Still Images

- Retouch an Image
- Adjust Image Brightness
- Rotate an Image
- Change Image Size
- Correct Backlight
- Refresh Skin Tone

(▶ P. 11-15)





## Creating a Folder

- 1 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ⇒  
Select a folder type ⇒

〈Example〉 When My Picture is Selected



Folder List Window

- 2 ⇒ **Add folder** ⇒ ⇒  
Enter folder name ⇒

### Tip

- Folders can only be created in handset Data Folder.

## Moving Files to a Different Folder

- 1 [File List] window ⇒ Select a file ⇒ ⇒ **Move** ⇒

- 2 **Move this** ⇒ ⇒ Select a destination folder ⇒ ⇒  
**YES** ⇒

### ■ To Move Multiple Files

- ⇒ **Move selected** ⇒ ⇒ Select a destination folder ⇒ ⇒ Select a file ⇒ ⇒ Repeat the same step to specify other files ⇒ ⇒  
**YES** ⇒

### ■ To Move All Files in a Folder

- ⇒ **Move all** ⇒ ⇒ Select a destination folder ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Managing Folders

- Edit a Folder Name
- Delete a Folder
- Delete All Files in My Picture/Melody/Videos Folder

(▶ P. 11-16)

#### Managing Files

- Edit a Title in My Picture File List Window
- Check Volume of Saved Files
- Edit a File Name
- Delete Files

(▶ P. 11-16)





## About Memory Card

Save files to memory cards. Still images and videos shot with handset camera can be saved directly to memory card. Data can be copied and moved between handset and memory card. Data on memory card can also be accessed from Data Folder.

- Handset supports memory cards of up to 2 GB.
- Do not insert or remove memory cards when handset power is on.
- Insert memory cards properly. Otherwise, they cannot be used on handset.
- Do not affix stickers or labels to memory cards. As memory cards are very thin and precise mechanisms, even a thin sticker or label on a memory card may cause contact failure or destruction of data.
- Keep memory cards out of reach of infants who may accidentally swallow them or be injured.
- Use only memory cards recommended by SoftBank. Other memory cards may not work properly and cannot be used on handset.
- Do not remove a memory card or power off handset while writing/reading data on/to that memory card. It may cause data loss or malfunction.

- Access to memory cards may be unavailable when the battery level is low.

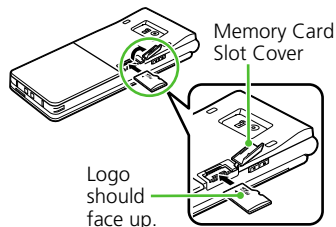
### Inserting & Removing a Memory Card

Power off handset before inserting/removing a memory card.


#### Insertion

- 1 Insert memory card gently with the printed logo facing up**

Push the card forward until it is locked in place.

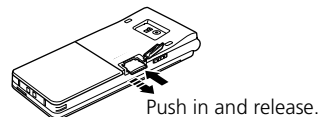


#### Tip

- If  appears in Display, there may be a contact failure. Remove and reinsert memory card.

#### Removal

- 1 Push memory card in completely and release it**  
Memory card is ejected.







## Formatting a Memory Card

- Format memory cards on handset only. Memory cards formatted on another device or PC may not work.
- Formatting a memory card deletes all the data on it.

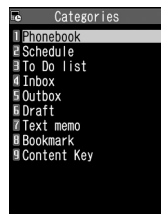
- 1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **microSD Manager** ⇒
- 2 ⇒ **microSD format** ⇒ ⇒ **Enter Handset Code** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

### Note

- Do not remove memory card while formatting. Handset/memory card malfunction may occur.
- Make sure that there is no important data left on the memory card before formatting it.

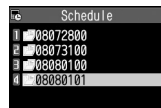
## Accessing Memory Card Data

- 1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **microSD Manager** ⇒



Category List Window

- 2 Select a category ⇒



File List Window

- 3 Select a file ⇒



Data List Window

- 4 Select a data item ⇒



Data Details Window





## Copying Data between Handset & Memory Card

Following items can be copied to/from handset and memory card:

PIM Data	Phone Book entries, Schedule, To Do List, text memos, Inbox, Outbox, Draft, bookmarks, content keys
Files in Data Folder	Still images, My Pictograms, Flash®, melodies, videos, songs

## Copying Handset Data to Memory Card






Copy handset data (Phone Book entries, Schedule, messages, images, videos, etc.) to memory card.

⟨Example⟩ Copy data in Data Folder to memory card

1 [Data List] window    
**Copy to microSD** 

## 2 Copy this

■ To Copy Multiple Data

⇒ **Copy selected**  ⇒ Select a data item  ⇒ Repeat the same step to specify other data   
 ⇒ **YES** 

■ To Copy All Data












⇒ **Copy all**  ⇒ Enter Handset Code  ⇒ **YES** 

### Tip

- When Phone Book entries or Schedule events that are set as secret are copied to memory card, their secret settings are canceled.
- Files attached to messages may be deleted.
- You need to select a destination folder when copying data in Data Folder.
- Secret Folders are not copied when you copy the whole Data Folder in which they are contained.
- Data saved in Pre-installed folders of Data Folder cannot be copied.
- Content keys are copied collectively at one time.






## Copying Memory Card Data to Handset

● To Copy Images or Other Data to Handset

1  ⇒ **Data Folder**    
 Select a folder type    
**microSD**  ⇒ Select a folder    
 ⇒ Select a data item    
**Copy to phone** 

## 2 Copy this

■ To Copy Multiple Data

⇒ **Copy selected**  ⇒ Select a data item  ⇒ Repeat the same step to specify other data   
 ⇒ **YES** 

■ To Copy All Data

⇒ **Copy all**  ⇒ Enter Handset Code  ⇒ **YES** 





### ● To Copy PIM Data to Handset

〈Example〉 Copy Data in Overwrite Mode

- 1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **microSD Manager** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a PIM data type** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a data item** ⇒ ⇒ **Copy & overwrite** ⇒

### 2 **Copy & OW this** ⇒

#### ■ To Copy Multiple Files

⇒ **Copy & OW select** ⇒ ⇒ Repeat the same step to specify other files ⇒

#### ■ To Copy All Files

⇒ **Copy & OW all** ⇒

- 3 **Enter Handset Code** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

#### Note

- When copying memory card data to handset in overwrite mode, the corresponding data on handset is overwritten by the copied data.

## Configuring Print Settings of Images

Specify which images on memory card to be printed and the number of prints, etc. in DPOF (Digital Print Order Format) settings so that the images can be printed by DPOF compatible printers or print service shops according to the specified print settings.

- 1 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ⇒ **My Picture** ⇒ ⇒ **microSD** ⇒ ⇒ **DCIM** ⇒

- 2 **Select a folder** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a still image** ⇒ ⇒ **DPOF setting** ⇒

- 3 **DPOF set One** ⇒

#### ■ To Specify Multiple Images

⇒ **DPOF set Choice** ⇒ ⇒ Select a still image ⇒ ⇒ Repeat the same step to specify other images ⇒

- 4 **Print** ⇒ ⇒ **Print Sheets** ⇒ ⇒ Enter number of prints ⇒

- 5 **a date** ⇒ ⇒ **ON** or **OFF** ⇒

- 6

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Memory Card

- Check Available Memory Space of Memory Card
- Check & Repair Memory Card
- Delete Data on Memory Card
- Cancel Print Settings of Images

(▶ P. 11-17)





## Accessing Files

### Start Here

[File List] window .....	P. 11-3
[Opened File] window .....	P. 11-3
[My Picture] window .....	P. 11-3
[Melody] window .....	P. 11-3
[Original Animation List] window .....	P. 11-4
[Playlist List] window .....	P. 11-5

### Opening Files

#### Check File Information

[File List] window/ [Opened File] window (⇒ Select a file) ⇒ ⇒ **Image info, Video info, Melody info or My Signal info** ⇒

#### Change Order of Files

[File List] window ⇒ ⇒ **Sort** ⇒ ⇒ Select a criterion ⇒

### Set an Image to Appear in Standby

[File List] window/ [Opened File] window (⇒ Select a file) ⇒ ⇒ **Set as display** ⇒ ⇒ **Stand-by display** ⇒ (⇒ Select a layout ⇒ ⇒ Confirm preview ⇒

You can also set images to appear when making calls or sending messages.

### Set a Video to Appear in Standby

[File List] window ⇒ Select a file ⇒ ⇒ **Stand-by display** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

### Set a Melody/Video as Ringtone

[File List] window/ [Opened File] window (⇒ Select a file) ⇒ ⇒ **Ring tone or Select ring tone** ⇒ ⇒ Select an item ⇒

## Viewing Images

### Play Animation from the Beginning

[My Picture] window ⇒ ⇒ **Retry** ⇒

### Compose Four Images to Make One

[File List] window ⇒ ⇒ **Composite image** ⇒ ⇒ Select a position ⇒ ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ⇒ Select an image ⇒ ⇒ Repeat the same step to assign three other images to their respective positions ⇒ ⇒

Only images in JPEG format can be used for creating composite images.

Copyright-protected images are unavailable.

Images saved on external memory devices (i.e. memory card) cannot be used.





## Set Display Size of an Image

[My Picture] window  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Set image disp.**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Normal** or **Fit in display**  $\Rightarrow$

## Edit Title of an Original Animation

[Original Animation List] window  
 $\Rightarrow$  Select an animation  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$   
**Edit title**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Edit title  $\Rightarrow$

## Cancel an Original Animation

[Original Animation List] window  
 $\Rightarrow$  Select an animation  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$   
**Release animation**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **YES**  $\Rightarrow$

## Playing Melodies

### Play All Melodies in the Same Folder Repeatedly

[Melody] window  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Set repeat play**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **ON**  $\Rightarrow$

## Playing Videos

### Switch Display Format of File List Window

[File List] window  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **List setting**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Title** or **Title + image**  $\Rightarrow$

### Clear a Playlist

[Playlist List] window  $\Rightarrow$  Select a playlist  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Release playlist**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **YES**  $\Rightarrow$

## Editing Files

### Start Here

[My Picture] window ..... P. 11-7

## Editing Still Images

### Retouch an Image

[My Picture] window  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Edit image**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Retouch**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$   
 Select an effect  $\Rightarrow$  (twice)

## Adjust Image Brightness

[My Picture] window  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Edit image**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Brightness**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$   
 $\Rightarrow$  to adjust brightness  $\Rightarrow$

## Rotate an Image

[My Picture] window  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Edit image**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Rotate**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$   
**90° to right, 90° to left** or **180°**  $\Rightarrow$  (twice)

## Change Image Size

[My Picture] window  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Edit image**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Change size**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$   
 $\Rightarrow$  Select a size  $\Rightarrow$  (twice)

## Correct Backlight

[My Picture] window  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Edit image**  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  **Correct backlight**  $\Rightarrow$  (twice)





### Refresh Skin Tone

[My Picture] window → → **Edit image** → → **Refresh skin tone** → (twice)

## Managing Folders

### Start Here

[Folder List] window ..... P. 11-9

#### Edit a Folder Name

[Folder List] window → Select a folder → → **Edit folder name** → → Edit folder name →

Only names of user-created folders can be edited.

#### Delete a Folder

[Folder List] window → Select a folder → → **Delete folder** → → Enter Handset Code → → **YES** →

Only user-created folders can be deleted.

Files in the selected folder are also deleted.

When files that are set as wallpaper, ringtone, alarm tone, etc. are deleted, their settings are reset to default.

#### Delete All Files in My Picture/Melody/Videos Folder

[Folder List] window → → **Delete all image or Delete all** → → Enter Handset Code → → **YES** →

When files that are set as wallpaper, ringtone, alarm tone, etc. are deleted, their settings are reset to default.

## Managing Files

### Start Here

[File List] window ..... P. 11-3

#### Edit a Title in My Picture File List Window

[File List] window → Select an image file → → **Edit title** → → Edit title →

Titles of files saved in Pre-installed folders cannot be edited.

#### Check Volume of Saved Files

[File List] window → → **Memory info** →

#### Edit a File Name

[File List] window → Select a file → → **Edit file name** → → Edit file name →

Names of files saved in Pre-installed folders cannot be edited.





### Delete Files

[File List] window → Select a file  
→ [F] → **Delete** → [■] → **Delete this, Delete selected or Delete all**  
→ [■] (→ Select files → [■] → [☑] or  
enter Handset Code → [■]) → **YES**  
→ [■]

## Memory Card

### Start Here

[Category List] window ..... P. 11-11  
[File List] window ..... P. 11-11  
[Data List] window ..... P. 11-11  
[Data Details] window ..... P. 11-11

### Check Available Memory Space of Memory Card

[Category List] window/ [File List]  
window/ [Data List] window/  
[Data Details] window → [F] →  
**microSD info** → [■]

### Check & Repair Memory Card

[Category List] window → [F] →  
**Check microSD** → [■] → **YES** → [■]  
[👉] To cancel checking and repairing a  
memory card, press [☑] or [←].  
[👉] Some memory cards may not be  
repairable.

### Delete Data on Memory Card

[File List] window → Select a data  
item → [F] → **Delete** → [■] →  
**Delete this, Delete selected or**  
**Delete all** → [■] (→ Select data →  
[■] → [☑] or enter Handset Code →  
[■]) → **YES** → [■]

### Cancel Print Settings of Images

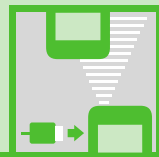
[MENU] → **Data Folder** → [■] → **My**  
**Picture** → [■] → **microSD** → [■] →  
**DCIM** → [■] → Select a folder →  
[■] → Select a still image → [F] →  
**DPOF setting** → [■] → **DPOF set**  
**One or DPOF set Choice** → [■] (→  
Select images → [■] → [☑]) → **Print**  
**OFF or All print OFF** → [■]







# Connectivity



<b>Infrared .....</b>	<b>12-2</b>
Getting Started .....	12-2
Transferring Data via Infrared .....	12-3
<b>PC Connection.....</b>	<b>12-5</b>
Utility Software CD-ROM (Japanese) .....	12-5
Data Transfer.....	12-6
Setting USB Mode .....	12-6
Manipulating Memory Card Data from a PC .....	12-6
Using Handset as Modem.....	12-6

## 12





## Getting Started

Wirelessly exchange files with infrared compatible devices.

The following data can be transferred via infrared:

- Still images
- Melodies
- Videos
- My Pictograms
- Songs
- Phone Book entries, Account Details
- Schedule events
- To Do List tasks
- Received messages, sent messages
- Draft messages
- Text memos
- Common Phrases (Templates)
- Own Dictionary data
- Bookmarks (Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser)

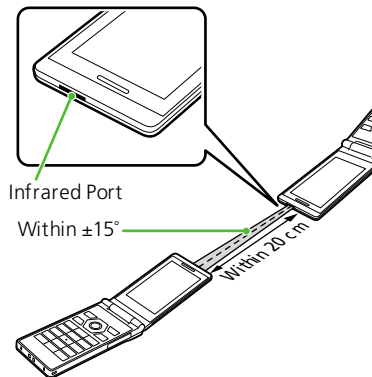
### Note

- Handset cannot send all still images, melodies, videos, My Pictograms or songs at one time.

## Precautions

- Data may not be sent depending on the status of the receiving device. Folder settings of received messages or bookmarks, etc., or contents of Graphic Mails may be lost or incorrectly transferred depending on the receiving handset model.
- Handset is out of range during infrared transmission, so such functions as voice and video calls, the Internet access and sending/receiving S! Mails are unavailable. This may continue even after infrared transmission is finished.
- Transferring data may take a while depending on the amount of data. Some data may not be received by handset.
- During transmission, progress bar shows approximate number of files transferred. Note that actual progress may be faster.
- Some pictograms and symbols in messages and Phone Book entries may not be received by handset correctly.
- All the still images on handset are overwritten, even those set as Phone Book entry images, if handset receives all still images at once.
- Align Infrared Ports of both sending and receiving devices, as shown below.

- Do not move either device until a message appears indicating completion of data transmission. Do not place any objects between the devices. Do not obstruct Infrared Ports.
- Infrared transmission may be disrupted by direct sunlight, directly under fluorescent lighting or near other infrared devices.







## Authentication Password

To transfer multiple files at once, the same authentication password must be entered on both sending and receiving devices.


## Transferring Data via Infrared

### Sending One File

Send one file at a time from a data list window/data details window.

- 1 In a data list window, select a file or open a data details window   **Send Ir data** 

#### ■To Send a JPEG Image

In a data list window 

This enables faster transmission.

- 2 Set the receiving device to receive data

- 3 Align Infrared Ports  **YES**



Transfer starts.

When the file is sent, a message appears indicating completion of transfer.

#### ■To Cancel Transfer



#### Tip

- In the case of high-speed transmission of JPEG images, the receiving device may fail to receive images, even when the image transmission is successfully completed by the sending device.

### Receiving One File

- 1   **Tools**   **Receive Ir Data**   **Receive** 

- 2 Align Infrared Ports

Transfer starts.

#### ■To Cancel Transfer



- 3 When file is received  **YES**










File is saved to handset.

File is discarded if no operation is done in about 30 seconds of transfer.

### Sending All Files

Send all files at one time from a data list window/data details window.

- 1 In a data list window/data details window   **Send all Ir data** 
- 2 Enter Handset Code   Enter authentication password
- 3 Set the receiving device to receive data
- 4 Align Infrared Ports  **YES** 



Transfer starts.

When all files are sent, a message appears indicating completion of transfer.

#### ■To Cancel Transfer







## Receiving All Files

- 1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒  
**Receive Ir Data** ⇒ ⇒  
**Receive all** ⇒
  - 2 **Enter Handset Code** ⇒ ⇒  
**Enter authentication password**
  - 3 **Align Infrared Ports** ⇒ **YES**  
 ⇒
  - 4 **When an overwrite confirmation window appears** ⇒ **YES** ⇒   
 Transfer starts.  
 When files are saved to handset, a saving completed message appears.
- **To Cancel Transfer**  
 ⇒

### Note

- When handset receives all files, the corresponding files on handset are overwritten. For example, when handset receives all messages, all the messages on handset including protected ones are overwritten; and when it receives all Phone Book data or Schedule data, all the Phone Book entries or events, including those set as secret, are overwritten.

## More Features

### **Customize**

#### Phone Book

- Do Not Send Phone Book Entry Images via Infrared

(▶ P. 13-16)





## PC Connection

Connect handset to a PC with a USB cable to use the following functions.

Function	Description
Data transfer*	Transfer Phone Book, Schedule and To Do List data between handset and a PC (P. 12-6).
USB memory	Use memory card inserted in handset as an external drive of a PC to read/write data on/to memory card (P. 12-6).

\* Install the USB driver on the supplied Utility Software (CD-ROM) on your PC in advance.

### Note

- The PC's power source is used when handset is connected to a PC with a USB cable, regardless of whether data transfer takes place.

## Utility Software CD-ROM (Japanese)

### Included Software

- USB Driver
- Data Transfer Tools for 820N/821N (P. 12-6)

### PC Operating Environments

Item	Requirement
PC	PC/AT compatible PC with at least one available USB port
Operating System	Japanese version of Windows 2000, XP, or Vista
Memory	More than the environment recommended for your OS
Hard Disk	More than 30 MB of free space* * Varies depending on the PC.
Others	Display: 800 × 600 pixels or more, and High Color or higher color specifications recommended

## Installing USB Driver on a PC

Install the USB driver on your PC before connecting handset to your PC. You must log on to Windows as a user with administrator privileges to install the USB driver.

- 1 Insert the Utility Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive of your PC
- 2 Connect handset to the PC using a USB cable
- 3 Install the USB driver following onscreen instructions

\* Although an error message appears, continue installation.

### Tip

- To uninstall the USB driver, select *820n\_821n\_un.exe* on the Utility Software CD-ROM.










## Data Transfer

### About Data Transfer Tools

Use this software to back up Phone Book, Schedule and To Do List data on handset to your PC and to restore the data to handset after editing it on your PC. For information about how to install the software, see the manual on the Utility Software CD-ROM.

## Setting USB Mode

Set USB mode before connecting handset to your PC via USB cable. To use handset as a modem for packet transmission, set USB mode to **Communication mode**. To manipulate memory card data from a PC, set it to **microSD mode**.

- 1  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **External Connection** ⇒  ⇒ **USB mode setting** ⇒ 
- 2 **Communication mode or microSD mode** ⇒ 

## Manipulating Memory Card Data from a PC

Connect handset to your PC using a USB cable, and manipulate memory card data from the PC.

- USB cable is sold separately as an optional accessory.
- Set **USB mode setting** to **microSD mode** in advance.

### 1 Connect handset to your PC using a USB cable

This enables memory card data to be manipulated from your PC.

### 2 When you are finished, disconnect handset from the PC

Follow the procedure for safely removing external devices (which differs slightly according to the operating system), when disconnecting handset from the PC.

### Note

- Make sure handset and the PC are properly connected. Otherwise, data cannot be transferred, and may even be lost.
- If handset's battery is almost or completely empty, data cannot be transferred, and may even be lost. Check handset's battery level and the power of your PC.
- Do not remove the USB cable while copying data from your PC to handset. If the USB cable is removed during data transfer, data cannot be transferred, and may even be lost.

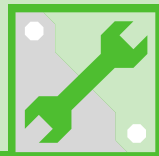
## Using Handset as Modem

Use handset as an external modem for packet transmission.

- Refer to the instructions of your Internet service provider or the manual of your PC for the network connection settings on your PC.
- To use "Access Internet" for data communication, you do not have to sign up with a service provider. For information about the service overview, access points and setting procedures, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-46).



# Customization



Clock, Display & Sounds.....	13-2
Phone Book & Calls .....	13-16
Mail.....	13-21
Internet .....	13-25
TV.....	13-29
Camera .....	13-33
Player & S! Appli.....	13-35
Other Settings .....	13-37

## 13





## Clock

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Clock** ⇒

12-hour or 24-hour Clock	⇒ <i>Clock display</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Style</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>12h clock</i> or <i>24h clock</i> ⇒
Clock Size	⇒ <i>Clock display</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Size</i> ⇒  ⇒ Select a size ⇒
Clock Color	⇒ <i>Clock display</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Color</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Black</i> or <i>White</i> ⇒
Set Auto Time Adjustment	⇒ <i>Set main time</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Auto time adjust</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Auto</i> ⇒  ⇒ Select a time zone ⇒ • Press  to change city/area name shown in Time Zone Selection window.
Manually Adjust Time	⇒ <i>Set main time</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Auto time adjust</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Manual (Date time set)</i> ⇒  ⇒ Select a time zone ⇒  ⇒ Enter date and time ⇒
Summer Time	⇒ <i>Set main time</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Summer time</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>ON</i> ⇒
Time Zone (Sub Clock)	⇒ <i>Set sub clock</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>display method</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Always</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>YES</i> ⇒  ⇒ Select a time zone ⇒
Hide Sub Clock	⇒ <i>Set sub clock</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>display method</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>OFF</i> ⇒
Summer Time (Sub Clock)	⇒ <i>Set sub clock</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Summer time</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>ON</i> ⇒





## Alarm

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Clock** ⇒

Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time	⇒ <b>Alarm setting</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Operation preferred</b> or <b>Alarm preferred</b> ⇒
Change Alarm Tone	⇒ <b>Clock Alarm Tone set</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select an item ⇒  ⇒ Set an alarm tone

## Auto Power On/Off

Set Auto Power On/Off	⇒ <b>Settings</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Clock</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Auto power ON</b> or <b>Auto power OFF</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>ON</b> ⇒  ⇒ Enter time ⇒  ⇒ <b>1 time</b> or <b>Daily</b> ⇒
-----------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## Style Mode Settings

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Style Mode Setting** ⇒

Set Display Design Collectively	⇒ Select a style ⇒  ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒
Check Default Style Mode Settings	⇒ Select a style ⇒ • Details of some items can be checked by selecting an item and pressing .
Edit Title of a Style	⇒ Select a style ⇒  ⇒ <b>Edit title</b> ⇒  ⇒ Edit title ⇒
Save Current Style Mode Settings as Favorite	⇒ お気に入り (Favorites) ⇒  ⇒  ⇒ <b>Take Setting info</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ • The current style mode settings can later be recalled collectively from お気に入り when they are changed.





Change Favorite Style Mode Settings by Each Item	⇒ お気に入り (Favorites) ⇒  ⇒ Select an item ⇒  ⇒ Set an image
Clear All Favorite Settings	⇒ お気に入り (Favorites) ⇒  ⇒ <b>Reset Setting info</b> ⇒  ⇒ YES ⇒

## Display Settings

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Display** ⇒

Wallpaper	⇒ <b>Display setting</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Stand-by display</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>My Picture</b> or <b>Videos</b> ⇒  ⇒ Set an image/video (⇒ Select a layout ⇒  (twice))
Show Calendar in Standby	⇒ <b>Display setting</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Stand-by display</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Calendar</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Background</b> ⇒  ⇒ Set an image ⇒ Select a layout ⇒  (twice) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select <b>No background</b> if you do not want any image in the background of the calendar.</li> <li>• Press , use  to select the calendar and press  to operate it. Use  to switch to the previous/next month. Press  to activate Schedule.</li> </ul>
Set Random Display of Images in Standby	⇒ <b>Display setting</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Stand-by display</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Random display</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a folder ⇒  ⇒ Select a layout ⇒ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Images switch at random each time handset is opened or returns to Standby.</li> </ul>
Set a Wake-up Image	⇒ <b>Display setting</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Wake-up display</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>My Picture</b> ⇒  ⇒ Set an image
Set a Wake-up Message	⇒ <b>Display setting</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Wake-up display</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Message</b> ⇒  ⇒ Enter message ⇒





## Clock, Display & Sounds

Set an Outgoing Call/Message Image	⇒ <i>Display setting</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Dialing, Video Call Dialing or Mail sending</i> ⇒  ⇒ Set an image
Set an Incoming Call/Message Image/Video	⇒ <i>Display setting</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Calling, Video Call Calling or Mail receiving</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Select calling disp. or Select receiving disp.</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>My Picture or Videos</i> ⇒  ⇒ Set an image/video
Set an Image for New Messages/Received Results Window	⇒ <i>Display setting</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Retrieve New or Mail rec'd result</i> ⇒  ⇒ Set an image
Display Color Scheme	⇒ <i>Display design</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Color pattern</i> ⇒  ⇒ Select a pattern ⇒
Set a Battery Level Indicator/Signal Strength Indicator Pattern	⇒ <i>Display design</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Icon pattern</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Battery icon or Antenna icon</i> ⇒  ⇒ Select a pattern ⇒
Change Softkey Color	⇒ <i>Display design</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Soft key</i> ⇒  ⇒ Select a color ⇒
Set Font Type	⇒ <i>Font</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Font type</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Gothic or Ming-cho</i> ⇒ • Alternatively, press and hold  in Standby to make font settings.
Set Font Thickness	⇒ <i>Font</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Thickness</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Thin or Bold</i> ⇒ • Alternatively, press and hold  in Standby to make font settings.
Set Font Sizes Collectively	⇒ <i>Font</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Character size</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Standard or X-large</i> ⇒ • Alternatively, press and hold  in Standby to make font settings.
Set Font Size for Each Function Window	⇒ <i>Font</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Character size</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Separate setting</i> ⇒  ⇒ Select a window ⇒  ⇒ Select a size ⇒  ⇒ • Alternatively, press and hold  in Standby to make font settings.





Interface Language	⇒ 言語選択 ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ 日本語 or English ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> • To change interface language from Japanese to English: ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ 設定 ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ ディスプレイ ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ Language ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ English ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/>
Set Image List View	⇒ Viewer settings ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ Picture or Title ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/>
Guard from Prying Eyes	⇒ Privacy angle ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ ON ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> • Alternatively, press and hold <input type="checkbox"/> in Standby to toggle Privacy Angle on and off.
Show Information of Messages Received When Watching TV	⇒ Quick Info setting ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ Display sender or Display sender/subject ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/>
Set 3D Effect When Returning to Standby	⇒ Screen effect ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ Select an item ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/>





## Backlight

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Display** ⇒ ⇒ **Backlight** ⇒

Set Backlight & Power Saving	⇒ <b>Lighting</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> ⇒  (⇒ Enter a time before the power saving mode is activated) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press and hold  in Standby to turn the backlight on/off.</li> <li>When the power saving mode is activated, nothing is shown in Standby and the Keypad backlight flashes. Pressing any key cancels the power saving mode.</li> </ul>
Set Backlight during Charging	⇒ <b>Charging</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Standard</b> or <b>All time ON</b> ⇒
Set Whether to Light Keypad Backlight	⇒ <b>Area</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>LCD+Keys</b> or <b>LCD</b> ⇒
Set Brightness of Backlight	⇒ <b>Brightness</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Bright</b> , <b>Middle</b> or <b>Dark</b> ⇒

## Desktop Icons

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Display** ⇒

Set Desktop Theme	⇒ <b>Desktop icon</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a theme ⇒  ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press  to see details of the selected theme.</li> </ul>
Change Icon Design of a Theme	⇒ <b>Desktop icon</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a theme ⇒  ⇒ Select an icon ⇒  ⇒ <b>CHG icon image</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Select icon image</b> or <b>Default icon image</b> ⇒ ⇒ Set an icon





Change Order of Icons of a Theme	⇒ <b>Desktop icon</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a theme ⇒  ⇒ Select an icon ⇒  ⇒ <b>Sort</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a position ⇒
Copy Icons to Another Theme	⇒ <b>Desktop icon</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a theme ⇒  ⇒ Select an icon ⇒  ⇒ <b>Copy</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Copy this, Copy selected</b> or <b>Copy all</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a destination theme ⇒  (⇒ Select icons ⇒  ⇒ ) • When <b>Copy selected</b> or <b>Copy all</b> is selected, select <b>YES</b> and press  at the end of the procedure.
Move Icons to Another Theme	⇒ <b>Desktop icon</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a theme ⇒  ⇒ Select an icon ⇒  ⇒ <b>Move</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Move this, Move selected</b> or <b>Move all</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a destination theme ⇒  (⇒ Select icons ⇒  ⇒ ) ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒
Delete Icons of a Theme	⇒ <b>Desktop icon</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a theme ⇒  ⇒ Select an icon ⇒  ⇒ <b>Delete</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Delete this, Delete selected</b> or <b>Delete all</b> ⇒  (⇒ Select icons ⇒  ⇒ ) ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒
Show New Message Indicator as 3D Animation	⇒ <b>3D display setting</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>ON</b> ⇒ • Emotion indicators and pictographs appear as 3D animation.

## Menu Display Settings

Start Here	⇒ <b>Settings</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Display</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Menu display set</b> ⇒
Switch Menu Display between List View and Details View	⇒ <b>Menu display</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>List</b> or <b>Detail</b> ⇒
Set Main Menu Theme	⇒ <b>Theme</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a theme ⇒





## Clock, Display & Sounds

Change Icon Design (Original Theme)	⇒ <i>Theme</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Original theme</i> ⇒  ⇒ Select a menu item ⇒  ⇒ Set an image
Change Background (Original Theme)	⇒ <i>Theme</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Original theme</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Background image</i> ⇒  ⇒ Set an image
Reset Original Theme Settings	⇒ <i>Theme</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Original theme</i> ⇒  ⇒ Select a menu item ⇒  ⇒ <i>Reset</i> or <i>All reset</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>YES</i> ⇒ • This procedure is only available when any Original theme settings have been changed.
Save Last Selected Menu Item to Memory	⇒ <i>Memory focus</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>ON</i> ⇒
Reset Menu Configuration to Default	⇒ <i>Reset menu op. log</i> ⇒  ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒  ⇒ <i>YES</i> ⇒

Start Here ⇒

Add a Menu Item to Original Menu	⇒ <i>&lt;Not stored&gt;</i> ⇒  ⇒  to select a function ⇒
Change Order of Original Menu Items	⇒ Select an item ⇒  ⇒ <i>Sort</i> ⇒  ⇒ Select a position ⇒
Cancel Original Menu Items	⇒ Select an item ⇒  ⇒ <i>Release</i> or <i>Release all</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>YES</i> ⇒
Reset Original Menu	⇒  ⇒ <i>Reset org. menu</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>YES</i> ⇒





## Standby Indicators

### Enable Indicator Selector

**MENU** ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Display** ⇒ ⇒ **Icons setting** ⇒ ⇒ **ON** ⇒

- The indicators at the top of Display are enabled by pressing in Standby. Use to select an indicators and press to access the corresponding function.

## My Signal Settings

**Start Here** **MENU** ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Display** ⇒ ⇒ **My Signal settings** ⇒ ⇒ **ON** ⇒

### Set Animation

⇒ **Close display, Connection, Phone, Video Call or Mail** ⇒ ⇒ Set an animation ⇒

- When *Close display* is selected, *Clock display* or *Random* can be set.

### Clock Pattern

⇒ **Clock display** ⇒ ⇒ Select a pattern ⇒ ⇒

### Show Clock during Charging

⇒ **Clock disp. for charge** ⇒ ⇒ **ON** ⇒ ⇒

- When *ON* is set, the *Simple* pattern clock is shown during charging.

### Specify Clock Display Interval
























⇒ **Time signal** ⇒ ⇒ **ON** ⇒ ⇒ **30 minutes or 60 minutes** ⇒ ⇒





## Incoming Call/Message Alerts

Start Here  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **Incoming Call** ⇒ 

Adjust Ringtone Volume	⇒ <b>Ring volume</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Phone, Video Call or Mail</b> ⇒  ⇒  ⇒  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When <b>Step</b> is set, the ringtone volume increases every 3 seconds. When <b>Silent</b> is set, no ringtone sounds.</li> </ul>
Set a Ringtone	⇒ <b>Select ring tone</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Phone, Video Call or Mail</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Select ring tone</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select an item ⇒  ⇒ Set a ringtone
Set Random Playback of Melodies as Ringtones	⇒ <b>Select ring tone</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Phone, Video Call or Mail</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Select ring tone</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Random melody</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a folder ⇒  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Melodies in the selected folder are played at random as ringtones.</li> </ul>
Set Ringing Duration of Incoming Message Ringtone	⇒ <b>Mail ring time</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Mail</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>ON</b> ⇒  ⇒ Enter ringing duration <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When <b>OFF</b> is set, no ringtone sounds and handset does not vibrate when receiving messages.</li> </ul>
Set Vibration*	⇒ <b>Vibrator</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Phone, Video Call or Mail</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a pattern ⇒  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When <b>Melody linkage</b> is set, handset vibrates to the melody set as ringtone.</li> </ul>
Set Illumination Color	⇒ <b>Illumination</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Set color</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Phone, Video Call or Mail</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a color ⇒ 

\* When **Vibrator** is not set to **OFF**, be careful not to let handset fall off a desk or slide too close to a stove, etc. when it vibrates.





Set Illumination Pattern	⇒ <i>Illumination</i> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ <i>Set pattern</i> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ <i>Standard</i> or <i>Melody linkage</i> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Even when <i>Melody linkage</i> is set, Illumination may not flash to the melody depending on the set ringtone.</li> </ul>
Set Illumination to Flash for Missed Calls/New Messages	⇒ <i>Illumination</i> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ <i>Missed info</i> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ <i>ON</i> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/>
Set an Incoming Call/Message Image	⇒ <i>Select ring tone</i> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ <i>Phone, Video Call</i> or <i>Mail</i> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ <i>Select calling disp.</i> or <i>Select receiving disp.</i> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> (⇒ <i>My Picture</i> or <i>Videos</i> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ) ⇒ Set an image/video
Show Phone Book Entry Images for Incoming Calls/Messages	⇒ <i>Disp. phonebook image</i> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ <i>ON</i> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/>

## Answering Incoming Calls

Start Here  ⇒ *Settings* ⇒ ☐ ⇒ *Incoming Call* ⇒ ☐

Set to Answer Calls by Pressing Any Key	⇒ <i>Answer setting</i> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ <i>Any key answer</i> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can answer incoming voice calls by pressing a key from <input type="button" value="⏏"/>, <input type="button" value="⏏"/>, <input type="button" value="0"/> - <input type="button" value="9"/>, <input type="button" value="✱"/>, <input type="button" value="CLR"/>, <input type="button" value="☑"/>, <input type="button" value="☒"/>, <input type="button" value="☒"/> and <input type="button" value="☒"/>. The any key answer function is disabled for incoming video calls.</li> </ul>
Set to Mute Ringtone by Pressing Any Key	⇒ <i>Answer setting</i> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ <i>Quick silent</i> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can mute the ringtone by pressing a key from <input type="button" value="0"/> - <input type="button" value="9"/>, <input type="button" value="✱"/>, <input type="button" value="CLR"/>, <input type="button" value="☑"/> (for voice calls only), <input type="button" value="☒"/>, <input type="button" value="☒"/> and <input type="button" value="☒"/> or by opening handset.</li> </ul>





## Manner Mode

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Incoming Call** ⇒ ⇒ **Manner mode set** ⇒

Set Manner Mode Type	⇒ Select a Manner Mode ⇒ • When <i>Super silent</i> is set, all tones emitted through the earpiece are also muted.
Configure Original Manner Mode	⇒ <b>Original</b> ⇒  ⇒ Set each item ⇒

## Checking Call Logs

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Incoming Call** ⇒





Emit Beeps to Notify of Missed Calls When  is Pressed	⇒ <b>Info notice setting</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>ON</b> ⇒ • A set of two short beeps sounds twice when you have missed calls, and three short beeps sound when you have no missed calls.
Read Out Callers' Info of Missed Calls When  is Pressed	⇒ <b>不在／新着確認設定</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>ボイス</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>ON</b> ⇒ • Available only when interface language is set to <b>日本語</b> (Japanese) (P. 13-6). • Two short beeps sound and missed call information (callers' names, etc.) is read out. When you have no missed calls, the current time is read out after two short beeps.
Change Colors of Names/Phone Numbers/E-mail Addresses in Call/Message Log Windows	⇒ <b>Disp. call/receive No.</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a color ⇒ • Pressing  toggles the color palette between 16 colors and 256 colors. • To reset the color settings to default, press .












## Sounds

Start Here  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **Other Settings** ⇒ 

Mute Key Operation Tones	⇒ <i>Keypad sound</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>OFF</i> ⇒ 
Set to Play Charging Start/End Tones	⇒ <i>Charge sound</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>ON</i> ⇒ 

Start Here  ⇒ **Tools** ⇒  ⇒ **Voice Announce** ⇒ 

















Record Sound to Set as Ringtone or Outgoing Message	⇒ Select an item ⇒  ⇒ <i>YES</i> ⇒  ⇒ Record sound (for about 15 seconds) • Press  to stop recording.
Play Recorded Sound	⇒ Select an item with ★ ⇒ 
Delete Recorded Sound	⇒ Select an item with ★ ⇒  ⇒ <i>Erase</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>YES</i> ⇒ 





## Earphone-Microphone

Start Here  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ 

Audio Output	⇒ <i>External Connection</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Headset usage setting</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Headset+speaker</i> or <i>Headset only</i> ⇒ 
Microphone Setting	⇒ <i>External Connection</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Select microphone</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Internal microphone</i> or <i>External microphone</i> ⇒ 
Answer Calls Automatically	⇒ <i>External Connection</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Auto answer setting</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Phone</i> or <i>Video Call</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>ON</i> ⇒  ⇒ Enter ring time
Save a Phone Number to Dial with an Earphone-Microphone	⇒ <i>Dialing</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Headset sw to dial</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Voice call</i> ⇒  ⇒ Select a Phone Book search method ⇒  ⇒ Search Phone Book ⇒ Select an entry ⇒  ⇒ Select a phone number ⇒ 





## Phone Book

Set Preferred Search Method	[Phone Book Search] window (P. 2-21) ⇒ Select a search method ⇒  ⇒ <b>OK</b> ⇒ • To cancel the preferred search method, press  in Phone Book Search window, select the search method with <b>★</b> , and then press .
Change Group Name	[Phone Book Entry List] window (P. 2-20) ⇒  ⇒ <b>Group setting</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a group ⇒  ⇒ Edit group name ⇒ • You cannot change the name of <i>No Group</i> .
Do Not Send Phone Book Entry Images via Infrared	⇒ <b>Tools</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Forwarding Image</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>OFF</b> ⇒

## Outgoing Calls

**Start Here** ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Dialing** ⇒

Save Prefix Numbers	⇒ <b>Prefix setting</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select an item ⇒  ⇒ Enter name ⇒  ⇒ Enter prefix numbers ⇒
Save Touch Tones	⇒ <b>Pause dial</b> ⇒  ⇒  ⇒ Enter touch tone numbers ⇒ • Press and hold  to enter "P" (Pause).
Set Numbers after "※" as Sub Address	⇒ <b>Sub-address setting</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>ON</b> ⇒





## International Calls

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Dialing** ⇒ ⇒ **Int'l dial assistance** ⇒

Change International Access Code Automatically Dialed with “+”	⇒ <b>Auto int'l call set.</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>ON</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a country code ⇒  ⇒ Select an international access code ⇒ • When <b>OFF</b> is set, the international access code is not entered when you press and hold . • You can select the international access code you saved in <b>IDD Prefix setting</b> .
Change a Country Code	⇒ <b>Country Code setting</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select an item ⇒  ⇒ Enter country name ⇒  ⇒ Enter country code ⇒
Save an International Access Code	⇒ <b>IDD Prefix setting</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select an item ⇒  ⇒ Enter international access name ⇒  ⇒ Enter international access code ⇒

## Call Settings

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Talk** ⇒

Set Reconnection Tone	⇒ <b>Reconnect signal</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>High tone</b> or <b>Low tone</b> ⇒
Set Noise Reduction	⇒ <b>Noise reduction</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>ON</b> ⇒
Set Weak Signal Alarm	⇒ <b>Quality alarm</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>High tone</b> or <b>Low tone</b> ⇒ • Calls may be disconnected without sounding the alarm when signal becomes suddenly too weak.





Set Illumination Color for Incoming Calls during Calls	⇒ <i>Illumination in talk</i> ⇒  ⇒ Select a color ⇒
Set to Mute by Closing Handset	⇒ <i>Setting when folded</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>No tone</i> ⇒
Set to End Call by Closing Handset	⇒ <i>Setting when folded</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>End the call</i> ⇒
Set a Hold Message	⇒ <i>Set hold tone</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>On hold tone</i> ⇒  ⇒ Select a hold tone ⇒

## Call Costs

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Call Time/Charge** ⇒













Set Auto Reset of Total Call Cost	⇒ <i>Auto reset total cost</i> ⇒  ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒  ⇒ <i>Auto reset</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> ⇒  ⇒ Enter PIN2 ⇒ • When <i>ON</i> is set, the total call cost indication is automatically reset to zero at twelve midnight on the first day of each month.
Set/Cancel a Maximum Call Cost Limit	⇒ <i>Set Max Cost Limit</i> ⇒  ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒  ⇒  ⇒  ⇒ Enter cost limit ⇒  ⇒  ⇒ <i>ON</i> ⇒  ⇒  ⇒ Enter PIN2 ⇒ • A call ends automatically and  appears in Display when the total call cost exceeds the set maximum limit. • When the set total call cost limit has been reached, all outgoing calls are disabled. To enable outgoing calls, set the maximum call cost limit to 0: ⇒ <i>Set Max Cost Limit</i> ⇒  ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒  ⇒  ⇒  ⇒ Enter 0 ⇒  ⇒  ⇒ Enter PIN2 ⇒





## Video Calls

Start Here  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **Video Call** ⇒ 

Set an Image to be Sent during Video Calls	⇒ <b>Select image</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select an item ⇒  ⇒ <b>Pre-installed</b> or <b>Original</b> ⇒  • To set an image other than the preinstalled image: ⇒ <b>Original</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Change setting</b> ⇒  ⇒ Set an image
Redial Automatically as Voice Call When Video Call Connection Fails	⇒ <b>Auto redial as voice</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>ON</b> ⇒ 
Set an Image to Appear in Main Window	⇒ <b>Display setting</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Main display</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Other side</b> or <b>My side</b> ⇒ 
Automatically Switch to Handsfree Mode in Video Calls	⇒ <b>Hands-free switch</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>ON</b> ⇒ 





## Global Roaming

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Int'l Roaming Set** ⇒

Set Operator	<p>⇒ <b>NW search mode</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Manual</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select an operator ⇒ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When <i>Auto</i> is set, an available operator is set automatically.</li> <li>• Use this procedure when handset is out of the service area of the currently used operator.</li> </ul>
Activate Network Re-search for an Available Operator	<p>⇒ <b>NW search mode</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Network re-search</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select an operator ⇒ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can select an operator only when <i>NW search mode</i> is set to <i>Manual</i>.</li> </ul>
Set Priority for Operators	<p>⇒ <b>NW search mode</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>PLMN setting</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select an operator ⇒  ⇒ <b>Change priority</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a position on the priority list ⇒  ⇒  ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When <i>Auto</i> or <i>Network re-search</i> is set under <i>NW search mode</i>, you are automatically connected to the highest priority operator among available operators.</li> </ul>
Show Operator Name While Roaming	<p>⇒ <b>Display operator name</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Display ON</b> ⇒ </p>





## S! Mail Settings

Start Here ⇒ **Mail Setting** ⇒

Edit Header/Signature	⇒ <b>Header/Signature</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Edit header</b> or <b>Edit signature</b> ⇒  (twice) ⇒ Edit header/signature ⇒
Insert Header/Signature Automatically	⇒ <b>Header/Signature</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Insert setting</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ⇒
Set to Check Delivery	⇒ <b>S! Mail settings</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Delivery Report</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>ON</b> ⇒ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>After a recipient receives your S! Mail, a message titled <i>S! Mail report</i> is sent to your handset.</li> </ul>

## SMS Settings

Start Here ⇒ **Mail Setting** ⇒ ⇒ **SMS settings** ⇒

Set to Check Delivery	⇒ <b>SMS report request</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>ON</b> ⇒ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>After a recipient receives your SMS message, a message titled <i>SMS report</i> is sent to your handset.</li> </ul>
Set Server Storage Period of SMS Messages	⇒ <b>SMS validity period</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a period ⇒ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When <i>None</i> is set, SMS messages you send are not stored on the server.</li> </ul>
Set SMS Input Language	⇒ <b>SMS input character</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Japanese (70char.)</b> or <b>English (160char.)</b> ⇒





## Incoming Message Settings

Start Here ⇒ **Mail Setting** ⇒

Customize E-mail Address	⇒ <b>Custom Mail Address</b> ⇒  ⇒ Follow onscreen instructions
Do Not Show Emotion Indicators	⇒ <b>Emotion/Keyword</b> ⇒  ⇒ Take the checkmark off from <b>Disp emotion</b> ⇒
Show Keyword Indicators	⇒ <b>Emotion/Keyword</b> ⇒  ⇒ Put a checkmark to <b>Disp keyword</b> ⇒ Select a keyword entry field ⇒  ⇒ Enter keyword ⇒  ⇒ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When handset receives an S! Mail containing the specified keyword, a keyword indicator  -  appears.</li> <li>In case a message contains both the content that matches an emotion indicator (P. 5-6) and a specified keyword, the keyword indicator takes priority.</li> </ul>
Delete Keywords	⇒ <b>Emotion/Keyword</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a keyword ⇒  ⇒ <b>Delete keyword</b> or <b>Delete all keyword</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒  ⇒
Set Priority When Receiving Messages during Operation	⇒ <b>Receiving setting</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Alarm preferred</b> or <b>Operation preferred</b> ⇒
Set Whether to Read Out Received Messages	⇒ <b>Read out setting</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Read out received mail</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> ⇒
Set Voice to Read Out Messages	⇒ <b>Read out setting</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Select voice</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a voice type ⇒
Set Manual Retrieval of S! Mail Text	⇒ <b>S! Mail settings</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Message Download</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Manual</b> ⇒





## Reply Settings

Change Quotation Marks

☒ ⇒ Mail Setting ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Header/Signature ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Edit Quotation marks ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Edit quotation mark ⇒ ☐

## Message View Settings & Others

Start Here ☒ ⇒ Mail Setting ⇒ ☐

Set Message List View

⇒ Mail list disp. ⇒ ☐ ⇒ 2 lines, 1 line or 1line+body ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Subject, Name or Address ⇒ ☐

Do Not Play Attached Melodies Automatically

⇒ Start attachment (auto) ⇒ ☐ ⇒ OFF ⇒ ☐

Set Number of Text Lines to Scroll

⇒ Scroll ⇒ ☐ ⇒ 1 line, 3 lines or 5 lines ⇒ ☐

Set Font Size of Text

⇒ Font size ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select a size ⇒ ☐

Check Mail Settings

⇒ Check settings ⇒ ☐

Reset Mail Settings







⇒ Reset ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒ ☐ ⇒ YES ⇒ ☐





## SMS Server Settings

Start Here  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **Connection Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **SMS center selection** ⇒ 

Change SMS Center Address	<p>⇒ <b>819066519300</b> ⇒  ⇒ Enter SMS center address ⇒  ⇒ <b>International</b> or <b>Unknown</b> ⇒ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 819066519300 is preset at the time of purchase. SMS may become unavailable if Center address is changed.</li> </ul>
Reset to SoftBank SMS Center Address	<p>⇒ <b>Reset</b> ⇒  ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒  ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ </p>





## Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

Start Here for Yahoo! Keitai Press and hold ⇒ **Browser Settings** ⇒

Start Here for PC Site Browser ● **Viewer type**  
Press and hold ⇒ **PC Site Browser** ⇒ ⇒ **Viewer type** ⇒ ⇒  
**Viewer type settings** ⇒

● **Standard type**  
Press and hold ⇒ **PC Site Browser** ⇒ ⇒ **Standard type** ⇒ ⇒  
**Standard type settings** ⇒

Set Scroll Unit/Speed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Yahoo! Keitai &amp; Standard type ⇒ <b>Scroll</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Whole page, Half page or Single line</b> ⇒ </li> <li>● Viewer type ⇒ <b>Scroll</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>High speed or Low speed</b> ⇒ </li> </ul>
Do Not Show/Download Images/Melodies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Yahoo! Keitai &amp; Standard type ⇒ <b>Downloads</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Images or Sounds</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Do not Show or Do not Play</b> ⇒ </li> <li>● Viewer type ⇒ <b>Set image disp.</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>OFF</b> ⇒ </li> </ul>
Clear Cache	⇒ <b>Memory manager</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Delete cache</b> ⇒  ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒  ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒

• This procedure is available under *Browser Settings* and *Standard type settings*.





Delete Cookies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yahoo! Keitai &amp; Standard type ⇒ <b>Memory manager</b> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ <b>Delete cookies</b> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/></li> <li>• Viewer type ⇒ <b>Delete cookies</b> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/></li> </ul>
Initialize Memory Status of Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser	⇒ <b>Initialized Browser</b> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> • This procedure is available under <i>Browser Settings</i> and <i>Standard type settings</i> .
Set Whether to Send Manufacture Number	⇒ <b>Security</b> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ <b>Manufacture number</b> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> • This procedure is available under <i>Browser Settings</i> and <i>Standard type settings</i> .
Set Whether to Send Referer	⇒ <b>Security</b> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ <b>Send referer</b> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> or <b>Confirm</b> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> • <i>Confirm</i> is only selectable under <i>Viewer type settings</i> .
Enable/Disable Cookies	⇒ <b>Security</b> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ <b>Cookie Settings</b> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ Select an option ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/>
Set Whether to Activate Scripts	⇒ <b>Security</b> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ <b>Script Settings</b> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ Select an option ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/>
Check Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser Settings	⇒ <b>Check settings</b> , <b>Check Viewer type set.</b> or <b>Check Std. type set.</b> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/>
Reset Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser Settings	⇒ <b>Reset</b> , <b>Reset Viewer type set.</b> or <b>Reset Std. type set.</b> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/> ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ <input type="checkbox"/>





## Yahoo! Keitai

**Start Here** Press and hold ⇒ **Browser Settings** ⇒

Set Font Size	⇒ <b>Font size</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a size ⇒
Set Flash® Sound On/Off	⇒ <b>Flash Sound effect</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> ⇒

## PC Site Browser

**Start Here** Press and hold ⇒ **PC Site Browser** ⇒ ⇒ **Viewer type** or **Standard type** ⇒ ⇒ **Viewer type settings** or **Standard type settings** ⇒

Do Not Show Alert When Activating PC Site Browser & Switching Browsers	⇒ <b>Warning messages</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>OFF</b> ⇒
Set Page Layout	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Standard type           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>⇒ <b>Display mode settings</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>PC screen</b> or <b>Small screen</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a size ⇒ </li> </ul> </li> <li>• Viewer type           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>⇒ <b>Display mode setting</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Original layout</b> or <b>Mobile layout</b> ⇒ </li> </ul> </li> <li>• When <b>PC screen</b> is set, web pages are shown with the same size as on PC screens.</li> <li>• When <b>Small screen</b> is set, web pages are laid out to fit handset Display.</li> <li>• Page sizes are only selectable under <b>Standard type settings</b>.</li> </ul>
Reset Last URL	⇒ <b>Reset last URL</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This procedure is available under <b>Viewer type settings</b>.</li> </ul>





## S! Quick News

**Start Here** Press and hold ⇒ **S! Quick News** ⇒ ⇒ **Settings** ⇒

Do Not Show S! Quick News in Standby	⇒ <b>Standby Settings</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Standby Disp. Set.</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>OFF</b> ⇒
Set Ticker Speed	⇒ <b>Standby Settings</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Speed Settings</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Fast, Normal</b> or <b>Slow</b> ⇒  (twice)
Set Which Information to Show in S! Quick News	⇒ <b>Standby Settings</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Unread &amp; Read Set.</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Unread Only</b> or <b>Unread &amp; Read</b> ⇒  (twice)
Do Not Show Images of S! Quick News	⇒ <b>Set Image Disp.</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>OFF</b> ⇒  (twice)
Reset Registered Contents of S! Quick News	⇒ <b>Del. Quick News</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒  (twice) ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒  (twice)

## Network Connection Settings


















Set Whether to Send Location Information	⇒ <b>Settings</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Send Location Info</b> ⇒  ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒  ⇒ <b>Confirm, Send</b> or <b>Not Send</b> ⇒ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When <b>Not Send</b> is set, you cannot access pages/contents that use handset location information.</li> </ul>
------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------





## Channel List

Start Here  ⇒ TV ⇒  ⇒ **Channel List** ⇒ 














Change Title of Channel List	⇒ Select a channel list ⇒  ⇒ <b>Edit title</b> ⇒  ⇒ Edit title ⇒ 
Delete a Channel List	⇒ Select a channel list ⇒  ⇒ <b>Delete this</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒  • The currently used channel list cannot be deleted.
Assign Channels to Remote Control Numbers	⇒ Select a channel list ⇒  ⇒  ⇒ <b>Remote control No.</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a remote control number ⇒  ⇒ Select a channel ⇒  ⇒ Repeat the same step ⇒  ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ 
Delete a Channel	⇒ Select a channel list ⇒  ⇒ Select a channel ⇒  ⇒ <b>Delete this</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ 





## Image & Sound

Start Here  ⇒ **TV** ⇒  ⇒ **User Settings** ⇒ 

Set Subtitle Display	⇒ <i>Subtitles</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>ON (Wide: Bottom), ON (Wide: Top) or OFF</i> ⇒ 
Show/Hide Icons in Landscape View	⇒ <i>Icon always show</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>ON or OFF</i> ⇒ 
Save Battery by Dimming Backlight	⇒ <i>ECO mode</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>YES</i> ⇒ 
Keep Backlight Lighted While Watching TV	⇒ <i>Display light</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Constant light</i> ⇒ 
Set Time Backlight Stays Lit While Watching TV	⇒ <i>Display light</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Lighting duration</i> ⇒  ⇒ Enter lighting time ⇒ 
Listen to Sound While Handset is Closed	⇒ <i>TV sound while closed</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>ON</i> ⇒  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When <i>ON</i> is set and handset is closed, the web page accessed from Data Broadcast may be updated automatically incurring packet transmission fees.</li> </ul>





## Data Broadcasts

Start Here ⇒ TV ⇒ ⇒ User Settings ⇒ ⇒ Data BC settings ⇒

Set Whether to Show Images in Pages Accessed from Data Broadcasts	⇒ Set image disp. ⇒  ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒
Enable/Disable Sound Effects of Data Broadcasts	⇒ Sound effect ⇒  ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒
Set Whether or Not to Show Confirmation Window Again	⇒ Reset disp. set. ⇒  ⇒ YES or NO ⇒ • Once you select YES (confirm once) in a confirmation window for accessing a web page from Data Broadcast, the window no longer appears. Use this procedure to set the window to reappear.

## Recording Programs













Continue/End Recording at Low Battery	⇒ TV ⇒  ⇒ User Settings ⇒  ⇒ Rec. while low battery ⇒  ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒
---------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------





## Other Settings

Start Here  ⇒ **TV** ⇒  ⇒ **User Settings** ⇒ 

Check TV Settings	⇒ <i>Check TV settings</i> ⇒ 
Reset Channel Settings	⇒ <i>Reset channel setting</i> ⇒  ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒  ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ 
Clear Data Broadcast Memory	⇒ <i>Reset storage area</i> ⇒  ⇒ Select an affiliated station ⇒  ⇒ <b>Delete this</b> or <b>Delete all</b> ⇒  (⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒  ) ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ 
Rest TV Settings	⇒ <i>Reset TV settings</i> ⇒  ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒  ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ 





## Camera/Video Settings

Set Image Quality	[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-4)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-5) ⇒  ⇒ <b>Quality setting</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a quality ⇒
Set File Size	[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-5) ⇒  ⇒ Select a file size ⇒
Set White Balance	[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-4)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-5) ⇒  ⇒ Select an item ⇒ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Photo Viewfinder, you need to set <i>Photo mode</i> (P. 7-9) to <i>OFF</i> before setting white balance.</li> </ul>
Reduce Flicker	[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-4)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-5) ⇒  ⇒ <b>Camera Settings</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Flicker</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Auto, Mode 1 (50Hz) or Mode 2 (60Hz)</b> ⇒
Set Shutter Sound	[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-4)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-5) ⇒  ⇒ <b>Shutter sound</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a shutter sound ⇒





## File Storage & Continuous Shooting

Set Storage Location for Shot Still Images/Videos	<p>[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-4)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-5) ⇒  ⇒ <b>Select to save</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Phone</b> or <b>microSD</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To save videos on memory card, select a folder of Inbox.</li> </ul>
Save Shot Still Images/Videos Automatically	<p>[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-4)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-5) ⇒  ⇒ <b>Auto save set</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>ON</b> ⇒ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Still images and videos shot with handset camera are saved to the folders specified in <i>Select to save</i>.</li> </ul>
Set Interval & Number of Shots for Continuous Shooting	<p>[Continuous Shooting Viewfinder] (P. 7-7) ⇒  ⇒ <b>Interval/Number</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Shot interval</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>0.5 seconds, 1.0 seconds</b> or <b>2.0 seconds</b> ⇒ </p> <p> ⇒ <b>Shot number</b> ⇒  ⇒ Enter number of shots ⇒ </p>





## Playback Window

Change Design of Playback Window	[Music Player Playback] window (P. 9-4) ⇒  ⇒ <b>Action setting</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Change skin</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a design ⇒
Set Image Display Size	[Video Player Playback] window (P. 9-4) ⇒  ⇒ <b>Action setting</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Set image disp.</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Normal</b> or <b>Fit in display</b> ⇒

## When Running S! Appli

Start Here ⇒ **S! Appli** ⇒ ⇒ **Settings** ⇒

Set Sound Volume	⇒ <b>Sound/Vib settings</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Volume</b> ⇒  ⇒  to adjust volume ⇒
Set Vibration	⇒ <b>Sound/Vib settings</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Vibration</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> ⇒
Set Backlight	⇒ <b>Backlight settings</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Switch On/Off</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Always ON</b> , <b>Always OFF</b> or <b>Link To phone set.</b> ⇒
Set Blinking of Backlight	⇒ <b>Backlight settings</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Blink</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> ⇒

Start Here ⇒ **S! Appli** ⇒ ⇒ **S! Appli Library** ⇒

Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Connect to Network	⇒ Select an S! Appli ⇒  ⇒ <b>Security settings</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Net access</b> ⇒ ⇒ Select whether or not to allow network communication ⇒
-----------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------





## Player & S! Appli

Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Write Personal Information	⇒ Select an S! Appli ⇒  ⇒ <b>Security settings</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Write user data</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select whether or not to allow writing personal information ⇒
Reset Security Settings of S! Appli	⇒ Select an S! Appli ⇒  ⇒ <b>Security settings</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Reset security set.</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒

## S! Appli Settings

Start Here ⇒ **S! Appli** ⇒ ⇒ **Settings** ⇒

Reset S! Appli Settings	⇒ <b>Reset</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Set to Default</b> ⇒  ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒  ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒
Delete All S! Appli	⇒ <b>Reset</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Memory All Clear</b> ⇒  ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒  ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒





## Other Settings

### Text Entry

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Other Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Character input set** ⇒

Set Text Input Method	⇒ <i>Input mode</i> ⇒  ⇒ Select an input method ⇒
Set Word Prediction	⇒ <i>Prediction</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> ⇒
Set to Show T9 Suggestion Words in Kanji or Hiragana	⇒ <i>T9 change mode</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>T9 Kanji change mode</i> or <i>T9 Kana change mode</i> ⇒
Clear Learning History	⇒ <i>Clear learned</i> ⇒  ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒  ⇒ <i>T9/Expect words/Pic. or Kana/Kanji change/face</i> ⇒
Change Font Size	⇒ <i>CHG input size</i> ⇒  ⇒ Select a size ⇒

### Shortcut Key









Change Function Assigned to Shortcut Key	⇒ <b>Settings</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Other Settings</b> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Shortcut-key setting</i> ⇒  ⇒ Select a function ⇒  ⇒ <i>YES</i> ⇒ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Alternatively, press and hold  in Standby to assign a function.</li> <li>To reset the function assignment to default, press , select <i>Reset Shortcut-key</i>, and press .</li> </ul>
------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------





## Resetting Handset

Start Here  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **Other Settings** ⇒ 

Reset All Settings to Default	⇒ <b>Reset settings</b> ⇒  ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒  ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ 
Initialize Handset to Default Status	⇒ <b>Initialize</b> ⇒  ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒  ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When the initialization is completed, handset automatically shuts down and restarts.</li> <li>• When handset is initialized, all data downloaded and saved on handset are deleted and cannot be restored.</li> <li>• Your Handset Code will also be reset to default.</li> </ul>



# Appendix



<b>Multitask Combinations.....</b>	<b>14-2</b>
<b>Software Update .....</b>	<b>14-4</b>
Updating Software .....	14-4
<b>Troubleshooting .....</b>	<b>14-5</b>
<b>Text Entry Key Assignments.....</b>	<b>14-9</b>
In 5-touch Mode.....	14-9
In 2-touch Mode.....	14-10
In T9 Input Mode .....	14-11
<b>Kuten Code List .....</b>	<b>14-12</b>
<b>Menu List .....</b>	<b>14-18</b>
<b>Specifications .....</b>	<b>14-31</b>
Main Specifications .....	14-31
Maximum Number of Storable Items .....	14-32
Memory Card Folders & Files.....	14-33
<b>Index.....</b>	<b>14-34</b>
<b>Warranty &amp; After Sales Service .....</b>	<b>14-45</b>
Warranty.....	14-45
After Sales Service .....	14-45
<b>Customer Service .....</b>	<b>14-46</b>

## 14





# Multitask Combinations

Function Currently Active Function	Mail	Yahoo! Keitai menu	S! Appli	Settings	Data Folder	Tools	Optional Services	Phone Book	Own Data	Music	TV	Camera	Original Menu
Mail Group Function	○*2	○	○	○*6	○	○*8*9	○	○*13	○	○	○	○	○
Yahoo! Keitai Group Function	○	×	○	○*6	○	○*8*9	○	○*13	○	○	○	○	○
S! Appli Group Function	○	○	×	○*6	○	○*8*9	○	○*13	○	○	○	○	○
Settings Group Function	○	○	○	×	○	○*8*9	×	○*13	○	○	○	○	○
Tools Group Function*1	○	○	○	○*6	×	×	○	×	×	○*6	○*6	×	○
TV & Music Group Function	○*3	○*4	○*5	○*6	○*4	○*6	○	○*13	○	×	×	○*16	○
During a Voice Call	○	○	×	×	×	○*9	○*11*12	○*13	○*14	×	×	○*17	○
During a Video Call	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
During Packet Transmission with a PC Connected	○	○	○	○*6	○	○*8*9	○	○*13	○	×	×	○	○

○: Can be activated. ×: Cannot be activated.

\*1 Except **Receive Ir Data**, **microSD Manager** and **USIM Operation** which cannot be activated with another function.


\*2 **Compose Message** and **Compose SMS** cannot be activated at the same time.

\*3 Audio functions such as those for reading out messages and playing mail-attached melodies cannot be activated at the same time as Music Player.





## Multitask Combinations

- \*4 Audio functions such as those for playing melodies and videos cannot be activated at the same time as Music Player. TV is temporarily paused.
- \*5 S! Appli cannot be activated when Music Player is playing. TV is temporarily paused.
- \*6 Cannot be activated depending on the function.
- \*7 Only *Pause dial* and *Keypad sound* are available.
- \*8 *Receive Ir Data*, *microSD Manager*, *Voice Announce* and *USIM Operation* are unavailable.
- \*9 Only the following functions are available: *Bar Code Reader*, *Schedule*, *To Do List*, *Text Memo*, *Calculator*, voice memo during a call, *Account Details*, *Text Reader* and *Dictionary*
- \*10 Voice memo during a call is available only when you press and hold .
- \*11 Playing messages at Voice Mail Center is impossible.
- \*12 *Caller ID Notification* is unavailable.
- \*13 *Restrictions* is unavailable.
- \*14 *Common Phrases*, *Own Dictionary* and *DL Dictionary* are unavailable.
- \*15 Only *Booking Program List* is available.
- \*16 Camera cannot be activated when Music Player is playing.
- \*17 Only *Photo mode* and *Continuous mode* are available.





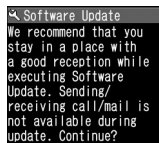
Check if software on handset needs to be updated, and update it through the network if necessary.

- Before updating software, turn off handset and restart it to make sure that all handset functions have ended.
- Disconnect the USB cable from handset. The software update, if it is done with the USB cable connected, may not be properly completed.
- No transmission fees apply to check/update software.
- Updating software may take 30 minutes or so. You cannot use handset until the software update is finished.
- Make sure battery is sufficiently charged before updating software.
- Update software in a location of good signal reception. Do not change locations while updating software.
- Never remove battery or USIM Card or turn off handset while updating software.
- You cannot use any other handset functions while updating software.

- You can update software without deleting data you saved on handset. However, data may be lost depending on the handset condition (e.g. a malfunction). We recommend that you make backups of important data (though it may be impossible to back up some downloaded data) before updating software. SoftBank is not liable for any data loss.
- If software update fails, handset may become inoperable. If this happens, contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 14-46).

## Updating Software

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Other Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Software Update** ⇒
- 2 **Software Update** ⇒



Software Update  
We recommend that you stay in a place with a good reception while executing Software Update. Sending/receiving call/mail is not available during update. Continue?

## 3 Follow onscreen instructions

### ● After Software is Updated

After an update completion message appears, handset restarts automatically, and an update results window opens.

## Checking Update Results

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Other Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Software Update** ⇒

### 2 Update Result ⇒

## Using Regular Updates

A confirmation window for software update opens at the scheduled time. Press or leave handset for a while to start automatic software update.

- If other functions are being used at the scheduled time, software update cannot start. End all functions to open the software update confirmation window (if you keep using other functions for more than ten minutes after a scheduled time, software update is canceled).





## Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Cannot turn on handset.	Is battery properly installed?	P. 1-12
	Is battery exhausted?	P. 1-20
It takes a long time to turn on handset.	It takes time if there are large amounts of data (e.g. Phone Book entries) saved on handset.	-
Cannot charge battery. Charging Indicator does not light up.	Is battery properly installed?	P. 1-12
	Is the charger (sold separately) plugged into an outlet properly?	P. 1-14
	Is the charger (sold separately) connected to handset properly? Is the connector of AC Charger correctly inserted into handset?	P. 1-14
Battery drains too fast.	Has the battery reached the end of its service life? The battery life may shorten depending on the usage environment.	P. 1-12
	The battery operation time fluctuates according to how you use handset.	P. 1-12

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Cannot make calls.	Is handset out of service area or in a location with a weak signal?	-
	Is a maximum call cost limit set?	P. 13-18
Cannot make calls using Keypad.	Is Keypad Lock active?	P. 4-4
	Is <i>Dial/sending mail</i> specified to be locked in Original (Dial) Lock mode?	P. 4-3
	Is <i>Restrict dialing</i> set?	P. 2-23
A message is heard saying that the number you have reached is not in service.	Did you include the area code when dialing a phone number?	-
Only a busy tone is heard after dialing a phone number.	Is <i>Network is busy at this moment Please try again later</i> shown in Display?	-
Cannot receive calls. The incoming ringtone does not sound.	Is handset in Manner Mode?	P. 1-18
	Is handset in Self Mode?	P. 4-5
	Is <i>Ring volume</i> set to <i>Silent</i> ?	P. 13-11






Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
The other party's voice is difficult to hear during calls.	Is the earpiece properly placed against your ear?	-
	Is anything obstructing the speaker if it is in handsfree mode?	-
	Is the earpiece volume properly adjusted?	P. 3-3, P. 3-8
The other party's voice is too loud during calls.	Is the earpiece volume properly adjusted?	P. 3-3, P. 3-8
Handset is slow to react when keys are pressed.	This may occur when there are large amounts of data saved on handset, or when large amounts of data are being transferred between handset and memory card.	-
Cannot hear key operation tones.	Is <b>Keypad sound</b> set to <b>OFF</b> ?	P. 13-14
	Is handset in Manner Mode?	P. 1-18
Side keys are inoperable when handset is closed.	Is Keypad Lock active?	P. 4-4
	Is <b>Side key guard</b> set to <b>ON</b> ?	P. 1-20

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Nothing is shown in Display.	Is power saving mode activated?	P. 13-7
	If handset is left in a very hot place, it may automatically shut down. If this happens, move handset to a location at an appropriate temperature (5 to 35°C) and wait for a while until the keys become operable again.	-
Display is hard to see.	Is <b>Brightness</b> under <b>Backlight</b> set to <b>Dark</b> ?	P. 13-7
	Is <b>Privacy angle</b> set to <b>ON</b> ?	P. 13-6
The Display backlight and Keypad backlight do not light.	Is <b>Lighting</b> under <b>Backlight</b> set to <b>OFF</b> ?	P. 13-7
	Press and hold <b>[5]</b> to turn on/off the backlight.	P. 13-7
Nothing is shown in My Signal Display.	Is <b>My Signal settings</b> set to <b>OFF</b> ?	P. 13-10
A message appears instead of an image, video or song.	The image, video or song is unavailable with the function being used when any of the following messages appears. <b>Not available</b> , <b>Expiredfile</b> and <b>No preview data</b>	-






## Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
 appears instead of an image or preview.	The image file may be corrupted.	-
The Flash® clock shown in Standby is stopped.	Is Keypad Lock active?	P. 4-4
Images shot with handset camera flicker.	When shooting images indoors, flicker may occur due to fluorescent lighting, etc. Changing the <b>Flicker</b> setting may help reduce flicker.	P. 13-33
Still images or videos shot with handset camera are too bright.	Were the still images or videos shot with <b>Flicker</b> not set to <b>Auto</b> ? Set <b>Flicker</b> to <b>Auto</b> .	P. 13-33
Still images or videos shot with handset camera are blurred.	Slide Macro Switch to the correct position.	P. 1-2, P. 1-3
	Select a Photo Mode suited to the subject or scene.	P. 7-9
Cannot watch TV.	Is handset out of the digital terrestrial broadcast service area or in a location with a weak signal?	-
	Are the channel settings done?	P. 8-4

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
<b>Insert USIM</b> appears.	USIM Card is not properly inserted or may be damaged.	P. 1-11
<b>Insert microSD</b> appears.	Memory card is not properly inserted or may be damaged.	P. 11-10
<b>Replace with a new one or check the disk</b> appears.	Perform a scan disk on memory card.	P. 11-17
<b>Please wait</b> appears.	This may be due to errors or heavy traffic on the voice call lines or packet transmission network. Try again after a while. You can still make emergency calls to 110, 119 and 118.	-
<b>Function cannot operate any more</b> appears.	End one of the currently active functions to continue operation.	-





Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
<i>Other function active Cannot start</i> appears.	These messages appear when you try to use an unavailable function when another function is active.	-
<i>Other function active Cannot operate</i> appears.		
<i>Memory shortage</i> appears.	This message appears when operation is interrupted due to insufficient memory. Reboot handset.	-
<i>Connection failed</i> appears.	Network connection is interrupted due to weak signal.	-
	The page you are trying to access is very busy. Try again after a while.	-
 (microSD card indicator marked with ?) appears.	The indicator appears when a defective memory card is inserted.	P. 11-17





## In 5-touch Mode

Key	Kanji/hiragana Entry Mode	Katakana Entry Mode	Alphanumeric Entry Mode	Number Entry Mode
1	あいうえおあいうえお	アイウエオアイウエオ	. @ / ? ! ( ) , _ : ' ~*5 & ¥ 1 Space	1
2	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	a b c A B C 2	2
3	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	d e f D E F 3	3
4	たちつてとっ	タチツテトツ	g h i G H I 4	4
5	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	j k l J K L 5	5
6	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	m n o M N O 6	6
7	まみむめも	マミムメモ	p q r s P Q R S 7	7
8	やゆやゃゅょ	ヤユヨャュョ	t u v T U V 8	8
9	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	w x y z W X Y Z 9	9
0	わをんわー	ワヲンワ*1ー	Space 0	0 +*6
*	。 。 *2, *3	。 。 *2, *3	_____ *2, *3	* *3
#	、 。 ? ! ・ Space *4	、 。 ? ! ・ Space*4	.ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp www. .com .html http:// https:// @softbank.ne.jp*7	#

\*1 The lower case of "ワ" can be entered in double-byte mode.

\*2 Can be toggled between upper case and lower case.

\*3 Press and hold (✱) to insert line feed "↓".

\*4 "、", "。", " ", "?", " ", "!", " ", and "・" cannot be entered when entering readings in Own Dictionary or in USIM Phone Book.

\*5 "ー" is entered in double-byte mode.

\*6 Press and hold (✱) to enter "+" when entering SMS message addresses.

\*7 Not shown in double-byte mode.





## In 2-touch Mode

## ● In Double-byte Mode

Key	Press Next									
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
Press First	1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D E
		あ	い	う	え	お	a	b	c	d e
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I J
							f	g	h	i j
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N O
							k	l	m	n o
	4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S T
				っ			p	q	r	s t
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X Y
							u	v	w	x y
	6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	— /
							z			
	7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&		*1
	8	や	(	ゆ	)	よ	*	#		*1
		や		ゆ		よ				*2
	9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4 5
	0	わ	を	ん	*3	*3	6	7	8	9 0
		わ			、	。				

## ● In Single-byte Mode

Key	Press Next									
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
Press First	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	A	B	C	D E
		ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	a	b	c	d e
	2	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	F	G	H	I J
							f	g	h	i j
	3	サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	K	L	M	N O
							k	l	m	n o
	4	タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	P	Q	R	S T
				ッ			p	q	r	s t
	5	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	U	V	W	X Y
							u	v	w	x y
	6	ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ	Z	?	!	— /
							z			
	7	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	¥	&		*1
	8	ヤ	(	ユ	)	ヨ	*	#		*1
		ヤ		ユ		ヨ				*2
	9	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	1	2	3	4 5
		@	/	-	_	:	.ne.jp	.co.jp	.ac.jp	@softbank.ne.jp
	0	ワ	ヲ	ン	*	*	6	7	8	9 0
		~	'		,	.	www.	.com	.html	http// https//

• Katakana are entered in double-byte mode when entering readings in USIM Phone Book.

\*1 Can be entered as double-byte characters only when entering pictographs is allowed, such as in Text Memo and Common Phrases.

\*2 Press **[8]** **[0]** to toggle between upper-case and lower-case modes. Pressing **[\*]** after entering an upper case character switches to the lower case character.

\*3 “\*” and “°” appear only after the characters to which they can be added. If you try to add “\*” or “°” to other characters, these diacritical marks will be replaced by spaces.

■ : Spaces are input.









# Kuten Code List

1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes										1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes										1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes										1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																													
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0



[illegible]





## 14

14-14





# Kuten Code List

1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	
448	矢	厄	役	約	葉	訊	躍	靖	柳	數	476	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	517	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	558	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
449	矢	厄	役	約	葉	訊	躍	靖	柳	數	477	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	518	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	559	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
	矢	厄	役	約	葉	訊	躍	靖	柳	數	478	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	519	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	560	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
449	愉	諭	憂	油	癒	優	友	有	幽		479	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	520	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	561	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
450	愉	諭	憂	油	癒	優	友	有	幽		480	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	521	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	562	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
451	悠	愉	諭	憂	油	癒	優	友	有	幽	481	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	522	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	563	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
452	祐										482	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	523	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	564	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
	悠	愉	諭	憂	油	癒	優	友	有	幽	483	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	524	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	565	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
452	余	揚	養	與	譽	雍	雍	雍	雍		484	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	525	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	566	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
453	與	譽	雍	雍	雍	雍	雍	雍	雍		485	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	526	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	567	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
454	與	譽	雍	雍	雍	雍	雍	雍	雍		486	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	527	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	568	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
455	與	譽	雍	雍	雍	雍	雍	雍	雍		487	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	528	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	569	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
456	與	譽	雍	雍	雍	雍	雍	雍	雍		488	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	529	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	570	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
	余	揚	養	與	譽	雍	雍	雍	雍		489	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	530	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	571	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
456	螺	裸	萊	賴	雷	洛	落	落	羅		490	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	531	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	572	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
457	亂	卵	來	賴	雷	洛	落	落	羅		491	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	532	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	573	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
458											492	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	533	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	574	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
	履	李	梨	理	離	律	立	利	吏		493	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	534	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	575	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
459	律	理	離	律	立	利	吏	利	吏		494	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	535	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	576	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
460	律	理	離	律	立	利	吏	利	吏		495	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	536	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	577	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
461	律	理	離	律	立	利	吏	利	吏		496	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	537	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	578	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
462	律	理	離	律	立	利	吏	利	吏		497	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	538	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	579	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
463	律	理	離	律	立	利	吏	利	吏		498	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	539	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	580	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
464	律	理	離	律	立	利	吏	利	吏		499	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	540	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	581	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
465	律	理	離	律	立	利	吏	利	吏		500	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	541	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	582	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
	履	李	梨	理	離	律	立	利	吏		501	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	542	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	583	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
466	瑞	聖	累	累	累	累	累	累	累		502	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	543	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	584	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
467	瑞	聖	累	累	累	累	累	累	累		503	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	544	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	585	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
468	瑞	聖	累	累	累	累	累	累	累		504	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	545	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	586	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
469	瑞	聖	累	累	累	累	累	累	累		505	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	546	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	587	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
470	瑞	聖	累	累	累	累	累	累	累		506	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	547	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	588	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
	履	李	梨	理	離	律	立	利	吏		507	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	548	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	589	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
470	露	勞	廖	廖	廖	廖	廖	廖	廖		508	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	549	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	590	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
471	露	勞	廖	廖	廖	廖	廖	廖	廖		509	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	550	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	591	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
472	露	勞	廖	廖	廖	廖	廖	廖	廖		510	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	551	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	592	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
473	露	勞	廖	廖	廖	廖	廖	廖	廖		511	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	552	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	593	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
	露	勞	廖	廖	廖	廖	廖	廖	廖		512	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	553	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	594	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
473	露	勞	廖	廖	廖	廖	廖	廖	廖		513	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	554	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	595	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
473	露	勞	廖	廖	廖	廖	廖	廖	廖		514	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	555	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	596	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
474	露	勞	廖	廖	廖	廖	廖	廖	廖		515	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	556	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	597	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
475	露	勞	廖	廖	廖	廖	廖	廖	廖		516	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	557	噶	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	囔	598	協	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆





## Appendix



[illegible]





# Menu List

- Enter menu item numbers for direct menu access. Note that Main Menu theme must be set to **Basic**.
- See "Check Default Style Mode Settings" (P. 13-3) for menu items whose default settings differ according to the model color.

## ● Mail

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Inbox	—	—	—	P. 5-9
Outbox	—	—	—	P. 5-9, P. 5-21
Draft	—	—	—	P. 5-21
Compose Message	—	—	—	P. 5-3
Compose SMS	—	—	—	P. 5-4
Server Mail	Mail list	—	—	P. 5-7
	Server mail memory	—	—	P. 5-18
Retrieve New	—	—	—	P. 5-17
Template	—	—	—	P. 5-17
Mail Setting	Custom Mail Address	—	—	P. 13-22
	Scroll		1 line	P. 13-23
	Font size		Standard	
	Mail list disp.		1line + body	
	Start attachment(auto)		OFF	
	Header/Signature		—	
	Mail box lock		—	P. 5-11
	Receiving setting		Operation preferred	P. 13-22
	Read out setting		Select voice: Female 1, Read out received mail: ON	
	Emotion/Keyword		—	





## Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Mail Setting	S! Mail settings	—	Message Download: Auto (All), Delivery Report: OFF	P. 13-21
	SMS settings		SMS report request: OFF, SMS validity period: 3 days, SMS input character: Japanese (70 char.)	
	Check settings		—	P. 13-23
	Reset		—	

### ●Yahoo! Keitai

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Yahoo! Keitai	—	—	—	P. 6-3
Bookmark	—	—	—	P. 6-10
Saved Pages	—	—	—	P. 6-10
History	—	—	—	P. 6-3
Enter URL	—	—	—	P. 6-3
PC Site Browser	Viewer type	—	See “●Viewer Type of PC Site Browser under Yahoo! Keitai” (P. 14-29).	P. 6-5
	Standard type		See “●Standard Type of PC Site Browser under Yahoo! Keitai” (P. 14-29).	
S! Quick News	S! Quick News List	—	—	P. 6-12
	S! Loop List		—	
	Settings		See “●S! Quick News Settings under Yahoo! Keitai” (P. 14-30).	
Browser Settings	Font size	—	Standard	P. 13-27
	Scroll		Single line	P. 13-25
	Downloads		Images: Show Images, Sounds: Play Sounds	
	Flash Sound effect		ON	P. 13-27
	Memory manager		—	P. 13-25





## Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Browser Settings	Security	—	Manufacture number: ON, Send referer: ON, Cookie Settings: Enabled, Script Settings: Ask NW Access	P. 13-26
	Check settings		—	
	Initialized Browser		—	
	Reset		—	

### ● S! Appli

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
S! Appli Library	—	—	—	P. 9-6
Settings	Sound/Vib settings	—	Volume: Level 4, Vibration: ON	P. 13-35
	Backlight settings		Switch On/Off: Link To phone set., Blink: ON	
	Reset		—	P. 13-36
Information	—	—	—	P. 9-6

### ● Settings

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Style Mode Setting	—	—	Differs according to the model color.	P. 13-3
Incoming Call	Ring volume	50	Phone, Video Call, Mail: Level 4	P. 13-11
	Select ring tone	13	Phone (Select ring tone: Pattern1, Select calling disp.: Flying Type), Video Call (Select ring tone: Pattern3, Select calling disp.: Flying Type), Mail (Select ring tone: You've got mail 1, Select receiving disp.: Flying Type)	
	Vibrator	54	Phone, Video Call, Mail: OFF	
	Illumination	89	Set color (Phone, Video Call: Color 1, Mail: Color 2), Set pattern: Standard, Missed info: ON	
	Manner mode set	20	Manner mode	P. 13-13





## Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Incoming Call	Disp. phonebook image	—	ON	P. 13-12
	Answer setting	58	Any key answer	
	Mail ring time	68	Mail: ON (Ring time: 05 seconds)	P. 13-11
	Ring time(sec.)	90	Set mute seconds: OFF, Missed calls display: Display	P. 4-5
	Info notice setting	65	ボイス (名前通知: OFF)	P. 13-13
	Answering Machine	55	OFF	P. 3-4
	Disp. call/receive No.	—	Orange Red and Black models: White, Other color models: Black	P. 13-13
Talk	Noise reduction	76	ON	P. 13-17
	Quality alarm	75	No tone	
	Reconnect signal	77	No tone	
	Illumination in talk	—	OFF	P. 13-18
	Set hold tone	—	On hold tone: Tone 1	
	Setting when folded	18	End the call	
Dialing	Pause dial	84	—	P. 13-16
	Sub-address setting	—	OFF	
	Prefix setting	—	国際発信 (Prefix: 0046010)	
	Headset sw to dial	—	OFF	P. 13-15
	Int'l dial assistance	—	Auto int'l call set.: ON, Country Code setting: 日本 (Country Code: 81), IDD Prefix setting: 国際発信 (IDD Prefix Code: 0046010)	P. 13-17
Video Call	Visual preference	—	Normal	P. 3-17
	Select image		On hold, Holding, Substitute image, Answering Machine, Preparing, Voice memo: Pre-installed	P. 13-19





## Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Video Call	Auto redial as voice	—	OFF	P. 13-19
	Display setting		Main display: Other side	
	Hands-free switch		ON	
Display	Display setting	56	Differs according to the model color.	P. 13-4
	Backlight	70	Lighting: ON + Saver (Light time: 02 minutes), Charging: Standard, Area: LCD + Keys, Brightness: ON + Middle	P. 13-7
	Display design	86	Differs according to the model color.	P. 13-5
	My Signal settings	93	ON	P. 13-10
	Font	66	Font type: Gothic, Thickness: Bold, Character size: Standard	P. 13-5
	Desktop icon	63	Theme 1	P. 13-7
	3D display setting	—	ON	P. 13-8
	言語選択 (Language)	15	日本語	P. 13-6
	Original menu	52	Account Details, Retrieve New, Ring volume, Vibrator, Alarm, Change security code	P. 13-9
	Menu display set	57	Menu display: List, Theme: Differs according to the model color, Memory focus: ON	P. 13-8
	Viewer settings	—	Picture	P. 13-6
	Icons	36	—	P. 1-7
	Icons setting	—	ON	P. 13-10
	Privacy angle	—	OFF	P. 13-6
	Quick Info setting	—	Display sender	
	Screen effect	—	Turn	
Call Time/Charge	Call data	61	—	P. 3-11





## Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Call Time/Charge	Set Max Cost Limit	—	Notify setting: OFF	P. 13-18
	Reset total	60	—	P. 3-19
	Auto reset total cost	—	OFF	P. 13-18
Clock	Set main time	31	Auto time adjust: Auto, Summer time: OFF	P. 13-2
	Set sub clock	—	display method: OFF, Summer time: OFF	
	Clock display	39	Style: 12h clock, Size, Color: Differ according to the model color.	
	Alarm setting	—	Alarm preferred	P. 13-3
	Clock Alarm Tone set	—	Alarm Tone	
	Auto power ON	—	OFF	
	Auto power OFF	—	OFF	
Lock/Security	Lock	—	OFF	P. 4-3
	Keypad lock	—	After folded: OFF, Timer: OFF	P. 4-4
	Self mode	—	OFF (not set)	P. 4-5
	Secret mode	40	OFF (not set)	P. 4-6
	Secret data only mode	41	OFF (not set)	
	Reject unknown	—	Accept	P. 4-5
	Call setting w/o ID	10	Unknown, Payphone, User unset: Accept (Select ring tone: Same as ring tone, select calling disp.: Same as display)	
	Change security code	29	9999	
	PIN setting	—	—	P. 4-2
Connection Settings	SMS center selection	—	819066519300	P. 13-24





## Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Connection Settings	Certificate	—	All certificates: Valid	P. 6-14
	Retrieve NW Info		—	P. 1-16
Send Location Info	—	—	Confirm	P. 13-28
External Connection	USB mode setting	—	Communication mode	P. 12-6
	Headset usage setting	51	Headset + speaker	P. 13-15
	Select microphone	—	External microphone	
	Auto answer setting	94	Phone, Video Call: OFF	
Int'l Roaming Set	NW search mode	—	Auto	P. 13-20
	Display operator name		Display OFF	
Other Settings	Keypad sound	30	OFF	P. 13-14
	Charge sound	—	ON	
	Battery level	71	—	P. 1-20
	Side key guard	—	OFF	
	Character input set	35	Input mode: 5-touch, Prediction: ON, T9 change mode: T9 Kanji change mode, CHG input size: Standard	P. 13-37
	Shortcut-key setting	—	Tomo-Den	
	Reset settings	23	—	P. 13-38
	Initialize	—	—	
	Software Update	—	—	P. 14-4

### ● Data Folder

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
My Picture	—	46	—	P. 11-2





## Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Melody	—	16	—	P. 11-2
S! Appli	—	—	—	P. 11-2
Ring Songs · Music	—	—	—	P. 11-2
Videos	—	—	—	P. 11-2
TV	—	—	—	P. 11-2
My Signal	—	—	—	P. 11-2

### ●Tools

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Bar Code Reader	—	—	—	P. 10-13
Receive Ir Data	—	79	—	P. 12-3
microSD Manager	—	—	—	P. 11-11
Life History Viewer	—	—	—	P. 10-2
Schedule	—	45	—	P. 10-3
Alarm	—	44	—	P. 10-11
To Do List	—	95	—	P. 10-6
Text Memo	—	42	—	P. 10-8
Calculator	—	85	—	P. 10-10
Play/Erase Msg.	—	—	—	P. 3-5, P. 3-18
Play/Erase VC Msg.	—	—	—	P. 3-5
Voice Memo	—	43	—	P. 10-9
Voice Announce	—	91	—	P. 13-14





## Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
USIM Operation	—	—	—	P. 2-24, P. 5-20
Account Details	—	0	—	P. 1-20
Forwarding Image	—	—	ON	P. 13-16
Text Reader	—	—	—	P. 10-15
Dictionary	—	—	—	—

### ●Optional Services

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Caller ID Notification	Activate/Deactivate	17	—	P. 3-21
	Get Status		—	
Voice Mail/Divert	Play Messages	—	—	P. 3-14, P. 3-15
	Voice Mail ON		—	
	Divert ON		—	
	Voice Mail/Divert OFF		—	
	Get Status		—	P. 3-19
	Erase Icon		—	
Call Waiting	ON	—	—	P. 3-19
	OFF		—	
	Get Status		—	
Call Barring	Outgoing Calls	—	—	P. 3-20
	Incoming Calls		—	
	Cancel All Barring		—	P. 3-21





## Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Call Barring	Get Status	—	—	P. 3-21
	Set NW Password	—	—	

### ●Phone Book

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
—	—	—	—	P. 2-18

### ●Own Data

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Received Calls	—	24	—	P. 3-11
Dialed Calls	—	—	—	P. 3-10
Mail Member	—	97	—	P. 5-4
Tomo-Den	—	—	—	P. 3-12
Common Phrases	—	38	—	P. 2-14
Own Dictionary	—	82	—	P. 2-15
DL Dictionary	—	—	—	P. 2-15

### ●Music

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
—	—	—	—	P. 9-3

### ●TV

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Watch TV	—	—	—	P. 8-5
Program Guide	—	—	—	P. 8-6





## Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Booking Program List	—	—	—	P. 8-9
Timer Recording List	—	—	—	P. 8-9
Result Timer Rec	—	—	—	P. 8-14
TV Link	—	—	—	P. 8-12
Channel List	—	—	—	P. 8-11
Channel Settings	—	—	—	P. 8-4
User Settings	Subtitles	—	ON (Wide: Bottom)	P. 13-30
	Rec. while low battery		ON	P. 13-31
	TV sound while closed		ON	P. 13-30
	ECO mode		OFF (not set)	
	Display light		Constant light	
	Data BC settings		Set image disp.: ON, Sound effect: ON	P. 13-31
	Icon always show		ON	P. 13-30
	Check TV settings		—	P. 13-32
	Reset channel setting		—	
	Reset storage area		—	
	Reset TV settings		—	

### ● Camera

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Photo Mode	—	—	—	P. 7-4
Movie Mode	—	—	—	P. 7-5
Voice Mode	—	—	—	P. 7-6





## Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
My Picture	—	—	—	P. 7-9
Videos	—	—	—	P. 7-9

### ●Viewer Type of PC Site Browser under Yahoo! Keitai

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Home	—	—	—	P. 6-5
Bookmark	—	—	—	
Last URL	—	—	—	
Enter URL	—	—	—	
Viewer type settings	Warning messages	—	ON	P. 13-25
	Scroll	—	Low speed	
	Display mode setting	—	Original layout	
	Set image disp.	—	ON	
	Delete cookies	—	—	
	Security	—	Send referer: ON, Cookie Settings: Enabled, Script Settings: ON	
	Check Viewer type set.	—	—	
	Reset last URL	—	—	
	Reset Viewer type set.	—	—	

### ●Standard Type of PC Site Browser under Yahoo! Keitai

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Home	—	—	—	P. 6-5
Bookmark	—	—	—	
Enter URL	—	—	—	





## Menu List

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
URL History	—	—	—	P. 6-5
Yahoo! Keitai	—	—	—	
Standard type settings	Warning messages	—	ON	P. 13-25
	Scroll	—	Single line	
	Display mode settings	—	PC screen: 100%, Small screen: Standard	
	Downloads	—	Images: Show Images, Sounds: Play Sounds	
	Memory manager	—	—	
	Security	—	Manufacture number: ON, Send referer: ON, Cookie Settings: Enabled, Script Settings: ON	
	Check Std. type set.	—	—	
	Initialized Browser	—	—	
	Reset Std. type set.	—	—	

### ● S! Quick News Settings under Yahoo! Keitai

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Auto Refresh	S! Quick News	—	OFF	P. 6-19
	General	—	OFF	
	S! Loop	—	OFF	
	Special	—	OFF	
Standby Settings	Standby Disp. Set.	—	ON	P. 13-28
	Speed Settings	—	Normal	
	Unread & Read Set.	—	Unread & Read	
Set Image Disp.	—	—	ON	
Del. Quick News	—	—	—	





## Main Specifications

Model		820N/821N
Dimensions (H x W x D)		820N: 107 x 49 x 11.7 mm 821N: 107 x 49 x 13.6 mm
Weight		820N: 102 g 821N: 107 g
Continuous Standby Time		Approx. 630 hrs
Continuous Talk Time		Voice Call: Approx. 250 min. Video Call: Approx. 100 min.
Charging Time		Max. 120 min.
Display/ My Signal Display	Type	Display: TFT 262,144 colors My Signal Display: 1 color LED
	Size	Display: Approx. 3.0 inches
	Pixels	Display: 102,480 pixels (240 x 427 dots) My Signal Display: 7 x 17 dots
Camera	Imaging device	CMOS
	Lens size	1/4 inch
	Effective pixels	Approx. 2 million pixels
	Recording pixels	Approx. 1.92 million pixels
	Zoom (digital)	Up to approx. 5 x
	Still images	Up to approx. 1,000 files <sup>*1</sup>

Camera	Still images for continuous shooting	4 to 20 files <sup>*2</sup>
	Still image file format	JPEG
	Video recording time	Handset: Up to approx. 276 sec. <sup>*3</sup> microSD™ memory card (64 MB): Up to approx. 90 min. <sup>*3</sup>
	Video file format	MPEG4
TV	Continuous watching time	Approx. 280 min.
	Maximum recording time	Approx. 600 min. <sup>*4</sup>
Storage Capacity	Chaku-Uta® and Chaku-Uta Full®	Approx. 80.0 MB <sup>*5</sup>

<sup>\*1</sup> In case the image size is Sub QCIF (128 x 96) and the image quality is set to **Fine** (the file size is 10 KB).

<sup>\*2</sup> Varies depending on the image size.

<sup>\*3</sup> Time for recording when recorded in the following conditions:

	Handset	microSD™ memory card
Image size	Sub QCIF (128 x 96)	
Image quality	Normal	
File size	Up to 2 MB	Long time
Recording type	Normal	

<sup>\*4</sup> Approximate time when recorded on a 2-GB microSD™ memory card.

<sup>\*5</sup> Shared with images, videos and saved pages.





## Maximum Number of Storable Items

Item		Maximum Number	Maximum That Can be Protected
Phone Book entries		1,000 <sup>*1</sup>	—
Schedule	Events	500	—
To Do List	Tasks	100	—
Mail	Received messages	1,000 <sup>*2 *3 *4</sup>	1,000 <sup>*2</sup>
	Sent messages	400 <sup>*2 *3 *4</sup>	200
	Draft messages	20 <sup>*2</sup>	—
Bookmarks	Yahoo! Keitai	100 <sup>*5</sup>	—
	PC Site Browser	100 <sup>*5</sup>	—
Saved Pages		100 <sup>*2</sup>	50
S! Appli		100 <sup>*2</sup>	—
Still images		1,000 <sup>*2 *4</sup>	—
Videos		100 <sup>*2 *5</sup>	—
Melodies		200 <sup>*2</sup>	—
Songs		100 <sup>*2</sup>	—
My Signal animations		50	—

\*1 Up to 50 entries can be saved on USIM Card.

\*2 The actual number that can be saved or protected may be less depending on the data size.

\*3 An additional 10 received and sent SMS messages can be saved on USIM Card.

\*4 Up to 100 additional messages/files can be saved in Secret Folders.

\*5 Up to 10 additional files can be saved in Secret Folder.





## Memory Card Folders & Files

Folder			File
DCIM	XXXNECDT		Still images captured with handset camera
PRIVATE	MYFOLDER	Mail	Backup data of Inbox, Outbox and Draft messages
		Utility	Calendar
			Contacts
			Memo
			Rights
			Tasks
		My Items	Bookmarks
			Flash®
			Games and More
			Music
			Pictograms
			Pictures
			Sounds & Ringtones
			Videos
		NE_Folder	Other files
SD_VIDEO	MGR_INFO		TV Program recording management file
	PRGXXX		TV Program recording files





## Number

2-touch Mode .....	2-15
3D display setting .....	13-8
5-touch Mode .....	2-12

## A

Access Files .....	11-3
Access Handset Functions .....	2-2
Access the Internet .....	
From Bookmarks .....	6-10
From Data Broadcasts .....	8-5
From Entered URL Record .....	6-14
From Last URL .....	6-7
From Scanned Data .....	10-22
From TV Links .....	8-12
From URL in Text .....	5-21
From Web Page .....	6-16
PC Site Browser .....	6-6
Using Access History .....	6-3
Using URL History .....	6-6
Yahoo! Keitai .....	6-3
Account Details .....	1-20
Add folder .....	
Bookmark .....	6-18
Data Folder .....	11-9
Messages .....	5-20
After Sales Service .....	14-45

Alarm .....	10-11
Cancel .....	10-12
Edit .....	10-21
Release all .....	10-20
Set .....	10-11
Set Priority .....	13-3
Alarm Activation Operations .....	10-12
Alarm Notification Operations .....	
Schedule .....	10-4
To Do List .....	10-6
Answer setting .....	13-12
Answer Video Calls .....	3-8
Answer Voice Calls .....	3-3
Answering Machine .....	3-4
Activate When Call Arrives .....	3-5
Play/Delete Messages .....	3-4, 3-18
Settings .....	3-4
Any key answer .....	13-12
Attach to Mail .....	
Bookmark .....	6-17
Delete Attached Files .....	5-16
Files .....	5-3
Shot Still Image/Video .....	5-16, 7-9
Authentication Password .....	12-3
Auto answer setting .....	13-15
Auto Power On/Off .....	13-3
Auto redial as voice .....	13-19
Auto reset total cost .....	13-18

Auto save set (Camera) .....	13-34
Auto Timer .....	7-8
Auto-sort .....	5-11

## B

Backlight .....	13-7
Bar Code Reader .....	10-13
Check Scanned Data .....	10-14
Delete Scanned Date .....	10-23
Scan .....	10-13
Basic Key Operations .....	1-4
Battery .....	1-12
Charge .....	1-12, 1-14
Check Battery Level .....	1-20
Installation .....	1-12
Battery Cover .....	1-2, 1-3
Booked Programs .....	
Change Order .....	8-14
Delete .....	8-14
Bookmarks .....	6-10
Access Page .....	6-10
Add folder .....	6-18
Delete .....	6-18
Delete folder .....	6-18
Edit URL .....	6-17
Move .....	6-18
Number of Bookmarks .....	6-17
Save .....	6-10





Save Scanned URL ..... 10-22  
 Send by Mail ..... 6-17  
 Sort folder ..... 6-18

## C

Calculator ..... 10-10  
 Call → See “Dial”  
 Call Barring ..... 3-20  
 Call Forward ..... 3-14  
 Call Rejection ..... 3-16  
 Call Time/Charge ..... 3-11  
 Call Waiting ..... 3-19  
 Caller ID ..... 3-16, 3-21  
 Camera ..... 7-2  
   Add Frames ..... 7-7  
   Auto Timer ..... 7-8  
   Brightness ..... 7-9  
   Camera Modes ..... 7-9  
   Capture Still Images ..... 7-4  
   Chance Capture ..... 7-5  
   Color mode set ..... 7-9  
   Continuous Shooting ..... 7-7  
   Image Size ..... 7-9  
   Memory info ..... 7-9  
   Photo Mode ..... 7-9  
   Record Videos ..... 7-5  
   Send Images/Videos by Mail ..... 7-9  
   Settings ..... 13-33

View/Play Image/Video ..... 7-9  
 Viewfinders ..... 7-3  
 Voice Mode ..... 7-6  
 Camera Indicator ..... 1-2, 1-3  
 Capture Still Images ..... 7-4  
 Center Access Code ..... 1-19  
 Certificate ..... 6-14  
 Chance Capture ..... 7-5  
 Change  
   Entry Number ..... 2-28  
   Font Size (Message Text) ..... 5-22  
   Font Size (Text Entry) ..... 13-37  
   Graphic Mail Effects ..... 5-16  
   Handset Code ..... 1-19  
   Icon Image ..... 2-25  
   Network Password ..... 3-21  
   PIN1/PIN2 ..... 4-2  
 Change skin ..... 13-35  
 Channel List ..... 13-29  
   Delete a Channel ..... 13-29  
   Remote Control Numbers ..... 13-29  
   Save Stations of a Different  
     Area ..... 8-11  
     Switch ..... 8-11  
 Channel Settings ..... 8-4  
   Automatic ..... 8-11  
   Reset ..... 13-32  
 Character stamp ..... 11-8

Charge Battery ..... 1-12  
   AC Charger ..... 1-14  
   Desktop Holder ..... 1-15  
 Charge sound ..... 13-14  
 Charger Terminals ..... 1-2, 1-3  
 Charging Indicator ..... 1-2, 1-3  
 Check Battery Level ..... 1-20  
 Check settings (Mail) ..... 13-23  
 Check settings (Yahoo! Keitai) ... 13-26  
 Check Std. type set. .... 13-26  
 Check TV settings ..... 13-32  
 Check Viewer type set. .... 13-26  
 CHG input method ..... 2-11  
 CHG input size ..... 13-37  
 Clear learned (Text Entry) ..... 13-37  
 Clock ..... 13-2  
 Clock Alarm Tone set ..... 13-3  
 Clock display ..... 13-2  
 Common Phrases → See “Templates  
 (Common Phrases)”  
 Compose & Send Messages ..... 5-3, 5-4  
   Attach Files ..... 5-3  
   Compose S! Mail ..... 5-3  
   Compose SMS ..... 5-4  
   Delete receiver ..... 5-14  
   Edit ..... 5-21  
   From Phone Book ..... 2-29  
   From Scanned Data ..... 10-22





From Tomo-Den .....	3-12
From Web Page .....	6-15
Graphic Mail .....	5-4
Insert Header/Signature .....	5-14
Save .....	5-15
Specify Recipients from a Mail	
Member List .....	5-14
To/Cc/Bcc .....	5-14
<b>Continuous Shooting .....</b>	<b>7-7</b>
<b>Cookie Settings .....</b>	<b>13-26</b>
<b>Copy</b>	
Between Handset & Memory	
Card .....	11-12
Event .....	10-19
Phone Book Entries .....	2-24, 2-30
SMS Messages .....	5-20
Text .....	2-14
<b>Customer Service .....</b>	<b>14-46</b>

## D

<b>Data BC settings .....</b>	<b>13-31</b>
<b>Data Broadcasts .....</b>	<b>8-5</b>
<b>Data Folder .....</b>	<b>11-2</b>
Add folder .....	11-9
Change Order of Files .....	11-14
Check File Information .....	11-14
Delete Files .....	11-17
Delete folder .....	11-16

Edit file name .....	11-16
Edit folder name .....	11-16
Edit Still Images .....	11-7
Edit Videos .....	11-8
Memory info .....	11-16
Move Files .....	11-9
Open Files .....	11-3
Original animation .....	11-4
Playlist (Melody) .....	11-4
Playlist (Video) .....	11-5
Ringtone .....	11-14
Secret Folders .....	4-6
Stand-by display .....	11-14
<b>Data Transfer Tools .....</b>	<b>12-6</b>
<b>Delete cache .....</b>	<b>13-25</b>
<b>Delete cookies .....</b>	<b>13-26</b>
<b>Delivery Report (S! Mail) .....</b>	<b>13-21</b>
<b>Desktop Icons/Notifications .....</b>	<b>2-4</b>
Change Order .....	2-25
CHG icon image .....	2-25
Delete Desktop Icons .....	2-25
Delete Notifications .....	2-25
Reset .....	2-25
Settings .....	13-7
Show/Hide .....	2-25

## Dial

From Dialed Calls .....	3-10
From Phone Book .....	2-20

From Received Calls .....	3-10
From Redial .....	3-10
From Scanned Data .....	10-22
From Tomo-Den .....	3-12
From Web Page .....	6-15
Global Roaming .....	3-13
International Calls .....	3-3
Phone Number in Message Text ...	5-21
Video Calls .....	3-7
Voice Calls .....	3-3
<b>Dial Lock .....</b>	<b>4-3</b>
<b>Dialed Calls .....</b>	<b>3-10</b>
<b>Dictionaries .....</b>	<b>2-15</b>
<b>Disp. call/receive No. ....</b>	<b>13-13</b>
<b>Disp. phonebook image .....</b>	<b>13-12</b>
<b>Display .....</b>	<b>1-2, 1-3</b>
<b>Display design .....</b>	<b>13-5</b>
<b>Display Indicators .....</b>	<b>1-7</b>
<b>Display light (TV) .....</b>	<b>13-30</b>
<b>Display mode setting(s) .....</b>	<b>13-27</b>
<b>Display operator name .....</b>	<b>13-20</b>
<b>Display setting .....</b>	<b>13-4</b>
Video Call .....	13-19
<b>DL Dictionary .....</b>	<b>2-15</b>
Delete .....	2-28
<b>Download</b>	
Music .....	9-3
S! Appli .....	9-6





Templates (Graphic Mail) .....	5-17
Downloads .....	13-25
DPOF setting .....	11-13

## E

<b>Earpiece (Speaker)</b>	
Volume .....	3-3, 3-8, 3-16
<b>ECO mode</b> .....	13-30
<b>Edit</b>	
Address (Mail Member) .....	5-16
Alarm Settings .....	10-21
Event .....	10-18
File Name (Data Folder) .....	11-16
Folder Name (Bookmark) .....	6-18
Folder Name (Data Folder) .....	11-16
Folder Name (Messages) .....	5-20
Folder Name (Templates) .....	2-27
Mail Member List Name .....	5-16
Own Dictionary .....	2-27
Phone Book Entry .....	2-30
Readings in T9 Input Mode .....	2-16
Still Images .....	11-7
Template (Graphic Mail) .....	5-17
Templates	
(Common Phrases) .....	2-14, 2-27
Text .....	2-14
Text Memo .....	10-8
URL (Bookmark) .....	6-17

Videos .....	11-8
View Timer Settings .....	8-14
<b>Edit Still Images</b> .....	11-7
Brightness .....	11-15
Change size .....	11-15
Character stamp .....	11-8
Correct backlight .....	11-15
Frame .....	11-7
Marker stamp .....	11-7
Refresh skin tone .....	11-16
Retouch .....	11-15
Rotate .....	11-15
Trim away .....	11-8
<b>Edit Videos</b> .....	11-8
<b>Emotion/Keyword</b> .....	13-22
<b>Emotion-Expressing Mail</b> .....	5-6
<b>Enter URL</b> .....	6-3, 6-7
Delete Records .....	6-14
<b>Events → See "Schedule (Events)"</b>	
<b>External Device Port</b> .....	1-2, 1-3

## F

File Size .....	13-33
Flash Sound effect .....	13-27
Flicker .....	13-33
Font .....	13-5
Font size (Internet) .....	13-27
Font size (Mail) .....	13-23

<b>Format Memory Card</b> .....	11-11
<b>Forward (Message)</b> .....	5-21
<b>Forwarding Image</b>	
(Phone Book) .....	13-16
<b>Frame</b> .....	7-7, 11-7

## G

<b>Global Roaming</b> .....	3-13
Call Japan and Other Countries .....	3-13
Call within the Same Country .....	3-13
Settings .....	13-20
<b>Graphic Mail</b>	
Cancel Effects .....	5-17
Create .....	5-4
Create Automatically .....	5-17
Create from a Template .....	5-17
Delete Templates .....	5-17
Edit a Template .....	5-17
Save template .....	5-17
<b>Group setting (Phone Book)</b> .....	13-16

## H

<b>Handset Code</b> .....	1-19
Change .....	1-19
<b>Handset Parts</b> .....	1-2, 1-3
<b>Handsfree</b> .....	3-17
<b>Hands-free switch (Video Call)</b> ...	13-19
<b>Header/Signature</b> .....	13-21, 13-23





Headset sw to dial .....	13-15
Headset usage setting .....	13-15
History .....	6-3
Delete .....	6-14
Holidays/Anniversaries .....	10-4

**I**

Icon always show .....	13-30
Icons setting .....	13-10
Illumination .....	1-2, 1-3, 13-11
Illumination in talk .....	13-18
Image	
Capture .....	7-4
Edit .....	11-7
Open Image File .....	11-3
Incoming Call Image .....	13-12
Incoming Message Image .....	13-12
Info notice setting .....	13-13
Infrared .....	12-2
Authentication Password .....	12-3
Receive all .....	12-4
Receive One File .....	12-3
Send all Ir data .....	12-3
Send One File .....	12-3
Infrared Port .....	1-2, 1-3
Initial Setup .....	1-16, 8-4
Initialize	
Handset .....	13-38

Memory Status (Internet) .....	13-26
Initialized Browser .....	13-26
Input mode .....	13-37
Insertion & Removal	
Battery .....	1-12
Memory Card .....	11-10
USIM Card .....	1-11
Int'l dial assistance .....	13-17
Internal Antenna .....	1-2, 1-3
International Calls .....	3-3
Enter " + " .....	3-16
Internet .....	6-2
Access History .....	6-3
Connect .....	6-3, 6-6
Enter URL .....	6-3, 6-7
Page Operations .....	6-8
Quick search .....	6-16
Reload .....	6-15
Return to Home .....	6-13
Send URL by Mail .....	6-15
Settings .....	13-25
URL History .....	6-6
Interval/Number (Continuous Shooting) .....	13-34

**J**

JAN Code .....	10-13
----------------	-------

**K**

Keypad Lock .....	4-4
Keypad sound .....	13-14

**L**

Language (言語選択) .....	13-6
Last URL .....	6-7
Life History Viewer .....	10-2
Lock	
Dial Lock .....	4-3
Keypad Lock .....	4-4
Original Lock .....	4-3

**M**

Macro Switch .....	1-2, 1-3
Mail .....	5-2
Add folder .....	5-20
Auto-sort .....	5-11
Delete .....	5-19
Delete All Messages in	
Inbox/Outbox .....	5-19
Delete all reports .....	5-19
Delete Attached Files .....	5-19
Delete folder .....	5-20
Delete read .....	5-19
Draft .....	5-21
Edit .....	5-21





Filter .....	5-22	<b>Melody Playback</b>		<b>Missed calls</b> .....	3-11
Folder lock .....	5-11	Playlist .....	11-4	<b>Move</b>	
Forward .....	5-21	Set repeat play .....	11-15	Bookmarks .....	6-18
Mail box lock .....	5-11	<b>Memory Card</b> .....	11-10	Files .....	11-9
Mail Setting .....	13-21	Access Data .....	11-11	Messages .....	5-19
Mail Windows .....	5-10	Check & Repair .....	11-17	<b>Multi Party Call</b> .....	3-20
Message Storage Locations .....	5-9	Check Available Memory		<b>Multitask</b> .....	2-8
Move .....	5-19	Space .....	11-17	Activate Another Function .....	2-8
Move trash box .....	5-19	Check microSD .....	11-17	Combinations .....	14-2
No. of messages .....	5-21	Copy Data from Handset .....	11-12	Toggle Functions .....	2-9
Protect .....	5-19	Copy Data to Handset .....	11-12	<b>Music → See "Songs"</b>	
Search mail .....	5-22	Delete Data .....	11-17	<b>Music Player</b> .....	9-2
Secret Folders .....	5-12	DPOF setting .....	11-13	Playback Windows .....	9-3
Sort .....	5-22	Folders & Files .....	14-33	Settings .....	13-35
Sort folder .....	5-20	Format .....	11-11	<b>My Phone Number</b> .....	1-20
<b>Mail list disp.</b> .....	13-23	Insert & Remove .....	11-10	<b>My Signal Display</b> .....	1-2, 1-3, 1-8
<b>Mail Member</b> .....	5-4	<b>Memory Card Slot</b> .....	1-2, 1-3	<b>My Signal settings</b> .....	13-10
Add Addresses .....	5-4	<b>Memory Space (Memory info)</b>			
Delete Addresses .....	5-16	Camera .....	7-9		
Edit address .....	5-16	Data Folder .....	11-16		
Specify Recipients .....	5-14	Memory Card .....	11-17		
<b>Mail ring time</b> .....	13-11	Music .....	9-8		
<b>Mail Setting</b> .....	13-21	Number of Saved Pages .....	6-19		
<b>Manner Mode</b> .....	1-18	S! Appli .....	9-9		
Manner mode set .....	13-13	Server mail memory .....	5-18		
Original .....	13-13	<b>Menu display set</b> .....	13-8		
<b>Manufacture number</b> .....	13-26	<b>Menu List</b> .....	14-18		
<b>Marker stamp</b> .....	11-7	<b>Message Download</b> .....	13-22		

## N

<b>NEC SUPER TOWN</b> .....	1-8
<b>Network Password</b> .....	1-19
<b>Noise reduction</b> .....	13-17
<b>Notify Caller ID</b> .....	3-16
<b>Number of Entries</b>	
Bookmarks .....	6-17
Events .....	10-18
Phone Book Entries .....	2-29
Saved Messages .....	5-21





NW search mode ..... 13-20

## O

One Seg Digital TV ..... 8-2

Open Inbox Messages ..... 5-6

Open New Messages ..... 5-6

Optional Services ..... 3-14

Original animation ..... 11-4

Original Lock ..... 4-3

    Customize ..... 4-3

    Settings ..... 4-3

Original Manner Mode ..... 13-13

Original Menu ..... 13-9

Own Dictionary ..... 2-15

    Delete ..... 2-28

    Edit ..... 2-27

## P

Pause dial ..... 3-17, 13-16

PC Connection ..... 12-5

    Manipulate Memory Card Data .... 12-6

    Packet Transmission ..... 12-6

    USB mode setting ..... 12-6

PC Site Browser ..... 6-5

    Change disp. mode ..... 6-13

    Initialize ..... 13-26

    Last URL ..... 6-7

    Standard Window ..... 6-5

Viewer Window ..... 6-5

Windows ..... 6-5

## Phone Book

Access Entries from Other

    Functions ..... 2-21

    Change Entry Number ..... 2-28

    Change Index Tab ..... 2-28

    Check Number of Entries ..... 2-29

    Copy ..... 2-30

    Copy to USIM Card ..... 2-24

    Create Entries ..... 2-19

    Create Entries from Other

        Functions ..... 2-19

    Delete Entries ..... 2-30

    Delete Items ..... 2-30

    Dial ..... 2-20

    Edit an Entry ..... 2-30

    Group setting ..... 13-16

    Restrictions ..... 2-23

    Ring tone/Image ..... 2-22

    Save from Scanned Data ..... 10-22

    Search ..... 2-21

    Set Incoming Image ..... 2-19

    Set Preferred Search Method ..... 13-16

    Set secret ..... 2-23

**PIN Lock & Cancellation** ..... 1-10

**PIN1/PIN2** ..... 1-10

    Change PIN1/PIN2 ..... 4-2

    PIN1code entry set ..... 4-2

**Place Calls on Hold** ..... 3-16

## Play

    Answering Machine ..... 3-4

    Music ..... 9-4

    Playlist ..... 9-5

    Voice Announce ..... 13-14

    Voice Mail ..... 3-15

**Playlist (Songs)** ..... 9-5

    Add music ..... 9-9

    Cancel Playlist Songs ..... 9-9

    Create ..... 9-5

    Delete ..... 9-9

    Play ..... 9-5

    Sort playlist ..... 9-9

**Power On/Off** ..... 1-16

**Prefix numbers** ..... 3-16

**Prefix setting** ..... 13-16

**Privacy Angle** ..... 13-6

**Program Guide** ..... 8-6

## Q

**QR Code** ..... 10-13

**Quality alarm** ..... 13-17

**Quality setting (Camera)** ..... 13-33

**Quick Info** ..... 13-6

**Quick Search** ..... 5-22, 6-16, 10-19

**Quick silent** ..... 13-12



**R**

Read out message .....	5-18
Read out setting .....	13-22
Receive & Open Messages .....	5-6
Manually Retrieve Messages .....	5-17
Open Inbox Messages .....	5-6
Open New Messages .....	5-6
Read out message .....	5-18
Reply .....	5-7
Retrieve Complete S! Mail .....	5-18
Save Attachments .....	5-12
Use Mail List .....	5-7
Received Calls .....	3-10
Receiving setting .....	13-22
Reconnect signal .....	13-17
Record Sound .....	7-6, 10-9
Sound without Video	
(Voice Mode) .....	7-6
Voice Announce .....	13-14
Record Timer .....	8-9
Record Videos .....	7-5
Movie type set .....	7-9
Redial .....	3-10
Register S! Quick News	
Contents .....	6-12
Reject Calls w/o Caller ID .....	4-5
Reject unknown .....	4-5

Reload Page .....	6-15
Data Broadcasts .....	8-12
Remote Control Numbers .....	13-29
Reply to Messages .....	5-7
Reset	
Channel Settings .....	13-32
Confirmation Window	
(Data Broadcasts) .....	13-31
Desktop Icons .....	2-25
Folder Name (Common Phrases) ...	2-27
Handset .....	13-38
Holidays .....	10-19
Last URL .....	13-27
Mail Member List Name .....	5-16
Mail Settings .....	13-23
Original Menu .....	13-9
PC Site Browser Settings .....	13-26
S! Appli Settings .....	13-36
S! Quick News .....	13-28
SMS center selection .....	13-24
Total Call Cost .....	3-19
Total Call Time .....	3-19
TV Settings .....	13-32
Yahoo! Keitai Settings .....	13-26
Reset settings .....	13-38
Reset Std. type set. ....	13-26
Reset storage area (TV) .....	13-32
Reset Viewer type set. ....	13-26

Retrieve New .....	5-17
Ring volume .....	13-11

**S**

S! Appli .....	9-6
Activate .....	9-7
Delete .....	9-9
Download .....	9-6
Settings .....	13-35
S! Loop .....	6-12
S! Mail → See "Mail"	
S! Quick News .....	6-12
Auto Refresh .....	6-19
Check Updated Information .....	6-12
Delete Registered Contents .....	6-19
Manually Update .....	6-19
Register Contents .....	6-12
S! Quick News Settings .....	13-28
Save	
Bookmarks .....	6-10
Events .....	10-3
Mail Member List .....	5-4
Own Dictionary .....	2-15
Phone Book Entries .....	2-19
Saved Pages .....	6-10
Tasks .....	10-6
Text Memos .....	10-8
Tomo-Den .....	3-12





TV Links .....	8-12	Schedule .....	10-19	Set sub clock .....	13-2
User Icons (Schedule) .....	10-18	Secret Data Only Mode .....	4-6	Setting when folded .....	13-18
<b>Saved Pages</b> .....	<b>6-10</b>	Secret Folders .....	4-6	Shoot Framed Images .....	7-7
Delete .....	6-19	Secret Mode .....	4-6	Shortcut-key setting .....	13-37
No. of pages .....	6-19	Secure Remote Lock .....	4-4	Shutter sound .....	13-33
Open .....	6-10	Security Codes .....	1-19	Side Key Guard .....	1-20
Protect .....	6-19	Center Access Code .....	1-19	Simple Menu .....	2-25
Save .....	6-10	Handset Code .....	1-19	<b>SMS</b>	
<b>Schedule (Events)</b> .....	<b>10-3</b>	Network Password .....	1-19	Receive .....	5-6
Add Holidays/Anniversaries .....	10-4	<b>Select image (Video Call)</b> .....	<b>13-19</b>	Send .....	5-4
Check .....	10-4	<b>Select microphone</b> .....	<b>13-15</b>	SMS center selection .....	13-24
Copy .....	10-19	<b>Select to save (Camera)</b> .....	<b>13-34</b>	SMS settings .....	13-21
Delete .....	10-5, 10-19	<b>Self Mode</b> .....	<b>4-5</b>	<b>Software Update</b> .....	<b>14-4</b>
Edit .....	10-18	<b>Send Location Info</b> .....	<b>13-28</b>	<b>Songs</b>	
No. of schedules .....	10-18	<b>Send Messages</b> .....	<b>5-3</b>	Download .....	9-3
Save .....	10-3	Check Delivery .....	5-15	Memory info .....	9-8
Save a Text Memo to		<b>Send referer</b> .....	<b>13-26</b>	Play .....	9-4
Schedule .....	10-20	<b>Server Mail</b> .....	<b>5-7</b>	Repeat setting .....	9-8
Window .....	10-3	Delete .....	5-18	Resume play .....	9-8
<b>Script Settings</b> .....	<b>13-26</b>	Forward .....	5-18	Search .....	9-8
<b>Scroll (Internet)</b> .....	<b>13-25</b>	Mail List .....	5-7, 5-18	Set as ringtone .....	9-8
<b>Scroll (Mail)</b> .....	<b>13-23</b>	<b>Set hold tone</b> .....	<b>13-18</b>	Sort .....	9-8
<b>Search</b>		<b>Set image disp. (Video Player)</b> ...	<b>13-35</b>	<b>Sort (Change Order)</b>	
Messages in a Folder .....	5-22	<b>Set main time</b> .....	<b>13-2</b>	Booked Programs .....	8-14
Phone Book .....	2-21	<b>Set Max Cost Limit</b> .....	<b>13-18</b>	Desktop Icons .....	2-25
Songs .....	9-8	<b>Set mute seconds</b> .....	<b>4-5</b>	Files .....	11-14
<b>Secret Data</b>		<b>Set Ringtone</b> .....	<b>13-11</b>	Folders (Bookmark) .....	6-18
Phone Book Entries .....	2-23	From Data Folder .....	11-14	Folders (Mail) .....	5-20





Messages .....	5-22
Original Menu Items .....	13-9
Playlist Songs .....	9-9
Songs .....	9-8
Tasks .....	10-19
<b>Speaker</b> .....	1-2, 1-3
<b>Specifications</b> .....	14-31
<b>Start attachment (auto)</b> .....	13-23
<b>Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable ...x</b>	
<b>Storage Location (Camera)</b> .....	13-34
<b>Strap Eyelet</b> .....	1-2, 1-3
<b>Style Mode Settings</b> .....	13-3
<b>Sub-address setting</b> .....	13-16
<b>Subtitles</b> .....	13-30

## T

<b>T9 change mode</b> .....	13-37
<b>T9 Input Mode</b> .....	2-16
<b>Templates (Common Phrases)</b>	
Delete .....	2-27
Edit .....	2-14, 2-27
Insert .....	2-13
<b>Text Entry</b> .....	2-10
2-touch Mode .....	2-15
5-touch Mode .....	2-12
Alphanumerics, Numbers &	
Katakana .....	2-13
Character Entry Modes .....	2-11

Common Phrases (Templates) .....	2-13
Copy .....	2-14
Correction .....	2-14
Cut .....	2-14
Dakuten (°) & Handakuten (°) .....	2-13
Deletion .....	2-14
Emoticons .....	2-13
Key Assignments .....	14-9
Kuten Code List .....	14-12
Kuten Codes .....	2-27
Line Feed .....	2-26
Lower Case .....	2-13
Lower Case & Upper Case .....	2-26
Overwrite & Insert Modes .....	2-26
Paste .....	2-14
Pictographs .....	2-13
Quote data .....	2-27
Scan Bar Code .....	10-21
Scan Text .....	10-21
Settings .....	13-37
Single-byte & Double-byte .....	2-26
Space .....	2-26
Split Windows .....	2-11
Symbols .....	2-13
T9 Input Mode .....	2-16
Text Entry Window .....	2-10
Text Input Methods .....	2-11
Use Dictionary .....	2-26

Word Prediction .....	2-12
<b>Text Memo</b> .....	10-8
Check Information .....	10-20
Delete .....	10-8
Edit .....	10-8
Save .....	10-8
Save from Scanned Data .....	10-22
Sort .....	10-20
<b>Text Reader</b> .....	10-15
Check Scanned Text .....	10-17
Correct Scanned Text .....	10-21
Delete Scanned Data .....	10-23
Edit Scanned Text .....	10-21
Scan .....	10-16
Scan Modes .....	10-15
Text Scanning Window .....	10-15
<b>Text Stamp → See “Character stamp”</b>	
<b>To Do List (Tasks)</b> .....	10-6
Change Order .....	10-19
Check .....	10-7
Delete .....	10-7, 10-20
Enter Completion Date .....	10-20
Save .....	10-6
Set Status .....	10-20
<b>To/Cc/Bcc</b> .....	5-14
<b>Tomo-Den</b> .....	3-12
Cancel Entries .....	3-19
Dial .....	3-12





Save Entries .....	3-12
Send Messages .....	3-12
Trim away (Still Image) .....	11-8
Troubleshooting .....	14-5
TV .....	8-2
Brightness .....	8-11
Channel Settings .....	8-4
Data Broadcasts .....	8-5
Program Guide .....	8-6
Program info .....	8-11
Record Timer .....	8-9
Settings .....	13-29
View Timer .....	8-9
Watch .....	8-5
Windows .....	8-3
TV Link .....	
Delete .....	8-13
No. of TV link .....	8-12
Save .....	8-12
Show Details .....	8-12
TV sound while closed .....	13-30

## U

Update .....	
Life History Viewer .....	10-18
S! Quick News List .....	6-19
Server Mail List .....	5-7, 5-18

URL History .....	6-6
Delete .....	6-14
USB mode setting .....	12-6
USIM Card .....	1-9
Copy Phone Book Entries ....	2-24, 2-30
Copy SMS Messages .....	5-20
Delete Phone Book Entries .....	2-30
Delete SMS Messages .....	5-20
Insertion & Removal .....	1-11
PINs .....	1-10

## V

Vibrator .....	13-11
Video Call .....	3-7
Brightness .....	3-17
Color mode set .....	3-17
Settings .....	13-19
Visual prefer. ....	3-17
White balance .....	3-17
Window .....	3-7
View Timer .....	8-9
Edit .....	8-14
Viewer settings .....	13-6
Voice Announce .....	13-14
Voice Call .....	3-3
Send Touch Tones .....	3-17
Voice Mail .....	3-15
Missed Call Notification .....	3-15

Play Messages .....	3-15
Voice Memo .....	10-9
Voice Recorder .....	10-9
Record the Other Party's Voice ....	10-9
Record Your Voice .....	10-9

## W

Wallpaper (Stand-by display) .....	13-4
Image in Data Folder .....	11-14
Recorded Video .....	7-10
Shot Still Image .....	7-10
Video in Data Folder .....	11-14
Warning messages .....	13-27
Warranty .....	14-45
White Balance .....	13-33
Word Prediction .....	2-12, 13-37

## Y

Yahoo! Keitai .....	6-3
Initialize .....	13-26
Switch to PC .....	6-13





### Warranty

A warranty card is included with handset.

- Check that the store name and purchase date sections have been filled correctly.
- Read the card carefully and store it in a safe place.
- See the card for the warranty period.

#### Note

- SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any damages incurred by you or third parties as a result of losing opportunities to make calls, etc. due to a failure or malfunction of this product.

### After Sales Service

Refer to “Troubleshooting” (P. 14-5) before submitting your handset for repair.

If problems still persist, contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance of your area (P. 14-46), or consult with your nearest SoftBank shop.

Provide us with detailed information of your problems.

- Repair within the warranty period is carried out in accordance with the conditions of the warranty.
- Repair after the warranty period is carried out if possible, and the owner of handset is responsible for any repair costs.

#### Note

- SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any damages incurred by you or third parties as a result of losing opportunities to make calls, etc. due to a failure, error or malfunction of this product.
- Data and settings you saved may be lost or altered as a result of failure or repair of handset. It is recommended that you keep a backup copy of important data (e.g. Phone Book entries, image and sound files). SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any damages due to the loss or alteration of handset data.
- Disassembling or modifying handset may constitute a violation of Radio Law. Your handset will not be accepted for repairs if it has been modified.

#### Tip

- For information on after sales service, contact your nearest SoftBank shop or SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-46).





If you have any questions about SoftBank handsets or services, call General Information. For repairs, call Customer Assistance.









## SoftBank Customer Centers

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at 157 for General Information or 113 for Customer Assistance.

## SoftBank Global Call Center

From outside Japan, dial +81-3-5351-3491 (Make sure to dial the correct number. International charges will apply.)

## ■ Call These Numbers Toll Free from Landlines

Subscription Area	Contact	
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	 0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	 0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	 0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	 0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	 0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	 0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	 0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	 0088-250-113



# SoftBank 820N/821N      User Guide

---

August 2008, First Edition

**SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.**



モバイル・リサイクル・ネットワーク  
携帯電話・PHSのリサイクルにご協力を。

**Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands).**

- \* Handsets, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.
- \* Always erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call logs, messages, etc.) before recycling.

\* For additional information, please visit a SoftBank Shop.

**Model: SoftBank 820N/821N**  
**Manufacturer: NEC Corporation**

---

MDT-000084-EAA0